IX. Some nouns are uncount nouns when they refer t_0 something in general and count nouns when they refer t_0 a particular instance of something.

Victory was now assured. (Uncount) In 1973, Egypt won a convincing victory (Count)

Ex38B): Use these phrases with "the" and uncount noun to complete the sentences which follow:

the news about Bill, the furniture in the sitting room. the advice you gave me, the information you need, the strength to go on, the traffic in Cairo.

- 1. I like I thought it looked very smart.
- 2. I'd like to thank you for
- 3. I'm tired out. I haven't got
- 4. You can find in my grammar book.
- 5.is dreadful particularly in the rush hour.
- 6. Have you heard?

Ex38 c)Choose the correct answer:

- We've got a lot of (luggage equipment help electricity) but it's not too heavy.
- At that time my (news information knowledge report) of German was limited.
- I'd like some (news knowledge report information)
 about trains please.
- They exported a million dollar's worth of stereo (machinery

 luggage help equipment).
- If you want my (opinion advice help report), I think you ought to start all over again.
- There's always a lot of (crown traffic equipment public) in the rush hour.
- 7. Do you cook by gas or (electricity fire stove air)?
- You can always telephone, if you need any (favour help knowledge traffic).
- 9. Money doesn't always bring (wisdom strength happiness mind).
- 10. People spend their (life some life lives living) worrying about money.

أسماء الأعلام Proper Nouns

هناك بعض الأسماء معروفة للناس أو الأماكن أو الأشياء تسمى بالإنجليزية : Proper المسماء الأعلام تبدأ بـ Capital letter (حرف كبير) مثال ذلك

- 1. Days of the week: Sunday Monday Tuesday etc.
- 2. Months of the year: January, February, March etc.
- 3. The names of cities and Persons : Cairo , London , New York , Ali , Ahmed , Salah , Mary , Cherin etc.
- 4. The names of countries: Egypt Britain Iraq etc.

Ex. (39a) Write out the following sentences putting the right capital letters:

- 1. ali lives in London.
- 2. alexandria is a fine city.
- 3. my brother's name is foad.
- 4. we set to america on queen mary.

اسم سفينة عابرة المحيطات

- 5. the sudan lies in the south of egypt.
- 6. william shakespeare was one of england's greatest poets.
- 7. the nile is a longer river than the thames.
- 8. paris is the capital of france.

الأسماء في حالة الملكية Nouns Possessive case

۱- الملكية للاسم المفرد يضاف ('s) بعد الاسم.
Possessive case

Nouns

Mary's cat.

The cat of Mary.

Salah's house.

The house of Salah.
 The foot of the girl.

The girl's foot.

(') appostrophe الملكية للاسم الجمع الذي ينتهي بحرف (s) يضاف إليه Nouns Possessive case

The house of the boys

The boys' house.

2. The hats of the girls.

The girls' hats.

- ٣- إذا لم ينته الجمع بحرف (S) تضاف (S') مثال ذلك :
- 1. Men's work is done in fields.
- 2. Women's work is done at home.
- 3. Children's work is done in the school.

٤- الملكية بالنسبة للأسماء تستعمل للناس والحيوانات وليست للأشياء مثال:

The teacher's lesson

The mother's dress.

answering you need to make the word plural, and for the other you will need to make no change.

Follow	the	exam	ıpıe.

Accommodation-bag-equipment - house - jewellery - job - Juggage - painting - shower - sunshine - tool - work. On the weather forecast they said there would be...this afternoon. On the weather forecast they said there would be sunshine / showers this afternoon.

- 1- The waiting room was full of people and their.../....., there was nowhere to sit.
- 2. Repairing car engines is easy if you 've got the right...../......
- 3. In Stockholm at the moment there's a fascinating exhibition of...../.....from 19th century Sweden.
- 4. Both my brothers are looking for...../.....
- 5. The price of/...... has increased by 12% this year alone.

الصفات Adjectives

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء.

1. Adjectives of quality

١- صفات النوع:

a fat man

a thin man

an old book a new book

a heavy box

a light box

a good egg a bad egg

2. Demonstrative adjectives:

٢- صفات الاشارة

· 1. I like **this** car.

Singular

Plural

2. I don't like **that** car.

this - that these - those

3. Interrogative adjectives :

٣- صفات الاستفهام

Examples:

- 1. What books are you reading?
- 2. Which boy can answer this question?
- 3. Whose house is that ?
- 4. Which house do you live in?
- 5. What price are eggs today ?

Ex. (40a) Put Interrogative Adjectives :

- 1. bicycle is that ?
- 2. questions have you answered?
- 3. time is it now?
- 4.lesson do you like best?
- 5. colour were the bottles on the table?

Ex. (40b) Put Demonstrative	adjectives :
1. I like flower.	
2. I like flowers.	
4 boys on the back se	eat are not working as hard as
boys on the front seat.	
Ex. (40c) Make the following	plural :
1. This door 2	. That open window.
3. This apple. 4	. That boy.
Ex. (40d) Make the following	g singular :
1. Those boys.	2. These boys.
3. Those large fierce animals.	I. These fine new bicycles.
4. Adjective of quantity:	٤- صفات العدد
a) I have two eyes.	
c) Have you any mango trees	
	۱- تضاف الضمائر one, ones عندما يتبع
ي لا تعد ويمكن أن تستعمل صفة أو ضمير.	٢-تستعمل some,any قبل الأسماء الجمع أو الت
	٣- تستعمل some في الجمل المثبتة.
I'll bring you some bread, shal	II?
No, thanks I've still got some.	
The work and button the beauty	 ٤- تستعمل any في الجملة المنفية.
I haven't any butter. He hasn't	
	ه- تستعمل any في الجمل مع. (بالكاد =)
I nave nardly any money.	There are scarcely any flowers.
Have an	- تستعمل any بعد صبيغة الاستفهام.
Have you any money? Did yo	
	وعندما يكون السؤال مقصودا به الدعوة أو الطلب
Will you have some tea? Would	
	'- في عبارات الشك بعد if عبارات الشك بعد for help.
If you	have any difficulty, ask me for help.
النفي بدلا من any للنفي.	no / none تستعمل مع أفعال مثبتة لتعبر عن (any)
لهي صفة فقط و none فهي ضمير دامه.	(any) يمكن أن تكون ضمير أو صفة أما no ف
صفة I haven't any apples	I have no apples
I haven't any ضمير	I have none

Many / Much

ا - تستعمل many لتصف الأسماء التي تعد وتستعمل much لتصف الأسماء التي لا تعد. We haven't much money, He didn't make many mistakes.

يمكن استعمال much / many كضمائر.

You have plenty of money, but I haven't much.

Mary gets lots of letters, but Nagi doesn't get many.

a great deal of , lots of , a lot of , plenty of.

much / many محل أن تحل محل −۲

plenty of a lot of The room contained lots of a great deal of a good / a great

students / furniture

many يمكن أن تسبق

She has a good many / a great many books.

Little / Few

Little / a little

little تستعمل لتصف الأسماء التي لا تعد

Few / a few

few تستعمل لتصف الأسماء التي تعد

a little = a small amount of a few = a small number of little=a very small amount of few=a very small number of.

تستعمل few / little لتوضح النقص في شيئ ما كما أن لها قوة النفي.

There is little good agricultural land. There is not much good land.

There is hardly any good land.

hardly any towns

Few towns have such a market.

not many towns

- توجد أشكال مركبة لـ some, any, no

وتنطبق عليها نفس القواعد السابقة.

someone,	somebody	something
anyone,	anybody	anything
no one,	no body	nothing,

I know something

You don't know anything.

Do you know anything?

You know nothing.

Comparison of Adjectives

- عدد كبير من الصفات تتكون درجة المقارنة بها بإضافة (er) للصفة العادية وتتكون الصفة الأحسن القصوى بإضافة (est) للصفة العادية.

Positive	الصفة	Comparative	الصفة Superlative
FUSITIVE	العادية	صفة المقارنة	الأحسن
tall	طويل	taller than	the tallest
short	قصير	shorter than	the shortest
quick	سريع	quicker than	the quickest
old	للناس والأشياء	older elder than	the oldest - eldest

٢- بعض الصفات يضاعف فيها الحرف الأخير عند تكوين صفة المقارنة أو الصفة الأحسن.

Positive	الصفة العادية	Comparative	Superlative
hot	حار	hotter than	the hottest
big	کبیر	bigger than	the biggest
fat	سمين	fatter than	the fattest
thin	نحيف	thinner than	the thinnest

٣- الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (e) يضاف إليها ٢ لتكوين الصفة المقارنة ويضاف إليها.

Positive	الصفة العادية	Comparative	Superlative
large	کبیر	larger than	the largest
fine		finer than	the finest

٤- الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (٧) عادة ما تتحول إلى (١)

Positive	الصفة العادية	Comparative	Superlative
pretty	جميل	prettier than	the prettiest
happy		happier than	the happiest
heavy	نَقْبِلُ	heavier than	the heaviest

the most, more than اليها المنات يضاف إليها

Positive	الصفة العادية	Comparative	Superlative
important	مهم	more important	most important
dangerous	خطير	more dangerous	most dangerous
valuable	قيم	more valuable	most valuable
wonderful	مدهش	more wonderful	most wonderful
convenient	ملائم	more convenient	most convenient

بعض الصفات الشاذة

	1	Superlative
Positive	Comparative	L.
dood	better than	the best

The state of the s		
bad	worse than	the worst
many		
much	more than	the most
some		
little	less than	the least
far	farther than	the farthest
	further than	the furthest

Uses of adjectives

استعمال الصفات

ا- عند استعمال الصفة الأولي نستعمل (as) قبل الصفة و (as) بعدها مثال ذلك :
Ali is as clever as Ahmed.

not as - as أ not so - as للنفي نستعمل

Ali is not so clever as Ahmed.

۲- للمقارنة نستعمل than بعد الصفة مثال ذلك :

Zaki is cleverer than Ahmed. This horse is better than that.

of بعد الصفة الأحسن (صفة التفضيل القصوى) غالبا ما تستعمل in للأماكن وof للأشخاص وقبلها the للأشخاص وقبلها

Nagi is the cleverest boy in the class.

Nabil is the best of the three boys.

the + comparative adjective,

the + another comparative adverb.

The bigger, the house is, the more money it will cost.

The more leisure he has, the happier he is.

Ex. (41a) Give the Comparative and Superlative of the following:

strong - merry - wide - beautiful - difficult - good - fortunate - bad - useful - nice - little - far - greedy - magnificent.

Ex. (41b) Fill in the missing word:

- 1. Ali is older Ahmed.
- 2. Salah is not old Fathy.
- 3. Ahmed is oldest the three.
- 4. This book is better that.
- 5. This book is not good that.
- 6. This exercise is more difficult that.
- 7. The weather is worse today it was yesterday.

Ex. (41c) Put the adjectives in brackets into the correct from: 1. Mary is the (clever) girl in the class. 2. The weather is (fine) to day than it was yesterday. 3. London is the (big) city in the world. 4. This sentence is (difficult) than the first one. 5. My dog is as (good) as yours. 6. My cold is (bad) today than it was yesterday. 7. They have (many) hens than we have but we get (few) eggs. Ex. (41d) Complete the sentences by putting in one of the following words : some , any , one , ones. 1. Are there tickets left ? I need 2. Please put apples on the table. There are hardly left. 3.I doubt whetherof the shops are open, but if you really want milk, I can easily borrow from the neighbour. 4. She has beautiful dresses. Did you see the she wore. at the party? Which party? She wears a different .. at every party. 5. Would you like more coffee ? I'm sure you would. 6. If there are cucumbers in the shop, please buy 7. I need a dictionary. Can you recommend 8. Have you oranges ? Yes, I bought in the market. 9.I bought second hand books "Were there interestingamong them ?" "Yes, I found good 10. There's hardly .. sugar in the house. You'd better go and buy Ex. (41e) Complete the sentences by adding one of the following words: much , many , little , few , less , fewer. 1. How chairs will you need? 2. I work hard all day. I have time for hobbies. 3. How flour will you need for the cake? 4. He's a wonderful person. There are people who would do the things he does. 5. I have money than you have. 6. If you ate bread, you would put on so weight. 7. Hurry up! We have very time. 8. We have done today than we did yesterday.

10. Although he is a very rich man, he spends...... on clothes.

9. I have mistakes than you have.

Adjectives endings in "ing" or "ed"

1. You use many "ing" adjectives to describe the effect that something has on your feelings or on the feelings of people in general. For example, if you talk about "a surprising number" you mean that the number surprises you.

alarming معرب embarrassing مبهر embarrassing معرب exciting مثير terrifying معرب فيل exciting معرب فيل exciting معنب المعرب فيل annoying معنب convincing معنب tiring معنب astonishing معنب tiring معنب astonishing معنب فيل epressing معنب المعنب فيل exciting معنب فيل exciting معنب فيل exciting معنب المعنب ال

b. She has always a warm welcoming smile.

2. You use some "ing" adjectives to describe something that continues over a period of time e.g. ageing عتيــق decreasing متــاقض living حــي existing موجــود booming dying متزايد increasing متزايد

One. Britain is an ageing society.

Two. Increasing prices are making food very expensive.

3. many "ed" adjectives describe people's feelings. They have the same form as the past participle of a transitive verb and have a passive meaning for example "a frightened person" is a person who has been frightened by something.

alarmed متعب delighted مسرور tired متعب frightened مرعوب surprised مندهش surprised مرعوب معتم بالمقتاع satisfied متعب troubled مندهش satisfied متعب troubled متعب bored مصدوم shocked مثار ۱ منفعل excited بشعر بالملل shocked

One. She looks alarmed about something.

Two. A bored student complained to his teacher.

Three. She had a big blue frightened eyes.

Note that لاحظ أن the past participle of irregular verbs do not end in "ed" but can be used as adjectives.

One. The bird had a broken wing.

Two. His coat was dirty and torn.

4.Like other adjectives"ing"and"ed"adjectives can be used

A- in front of noun

- 1. They still **show amazing** loyality to their parents.
- 2. This is the most terrifying tale ever written.
- 2. I was thanked by the satisfied customers.
- 4. The worried authorities cancelled the match.
- B. After link verbs أفعال الربط
- It's amazing what they can do.
- 2. The present situation is terrifying.
- 3. He felt satisfied with all the work he had done.
- 4. My husband was worried.

C-Modified by adverbials such as "Quite" Really and Very

- The film was quite boring.
- There is nothing very surprising in this.
- She was quite astonished at his behavior.
- 4. He was very disappointed young man.

D. In the comparative and superlative

- 1. His argument was more convincing than mine.
- 2. We became even more depressed after she died.
- 3. This is one of the most boring books I've ever read.
- She was the most interested in going to the cinema.
- 5. A small number of "ed" adjectives are normally only used after link verbs such as "be" "become" or "feel". They are related to transitive verbs and are often followed by a prepositional phrase, a "to-infinitive clause, or a that clause.

منعب tired مستعد prepared مهتم tired معتنع مرعوب scared مشترك ا متورط في involved مسرور . مثار thrilled مسرور pleased منتهى thrilled متأثر

- 1. The Brazilians are pleased with the results.
- He was always prepared to account for his actions.
- 3. She was scared that they would find her.
- A) We use adjectives or their comparative or superlative with the following words. very + adjective It's very cold today
- B) Even / a lot / much / far / a little / slightly + comparative He seems much better today
- C) by far + superlative She's by far the most beautiful woman I've ever seen.

D) Most + adj / adv = very This is m	nost unusual				
ry 42a) Choose the correct answer	r, 12a) Choose the correct answers from a,b, c, or d				
That was party I have ever b	That was party I have ever been to.				
b) better c) the b	pest d) the better				
2. The weather is getting hotter and					
a) hotter	b) the hottest				
c) hottest	d) the hotter				
3. My house is much than my old	d one.				
a) big b) bigger c) bigger					
4. Nagi is runner in the team.					
a) fast b) faster c) faste	est d) the fastest				
5. This man is not as Adel.					
a) strong	b) as strong				
c) stronger	d) the strongest				
6. I haven't been to the library					
a) yet b) still	c) just d) until				
7. The film was funnier than I ex					
a) by far b) even					
8. He's the cleverest boy in the s					
	c) more d) most				
9. I don't like the idea of walking	g home in the dark.				
	c) much d) fairly				
10 hard work had been of no u	b) Their all of				
u) All tileli	d) All of their				
c) Their all 11. We should use time we have	a available to discuss Adel's				
	a dvallable to disease viae.				
proposal.	b) little				
a) the little of	d) the little				
c) the few 12. The party was excellent, and I'd like					
a) concerned people	b) responsible people				
a / Concerned people	d) people concerning				
13. I asked Fady to clean the car and I	he did				
a) a well job	b) a good job				
c) the job good	d) the job well				
14 people trying to get into the football stadium.					
a) There were too much	o) There was too many				
	d) It was too many				

15. He was offered the job because he was ca	andidate
a) the best b) good c) the better	d) best
16. The sooner he moves out it will be for all	of us.
a) the best b) good c) the better	d) best
17. She is older than I thought.	
a) fairly b) quite c) much	d) rather
EX.42b) Complete the following pairs of sen	tences using
the correct form of the verb in brackets. Y	OU must use
the "ed" form for one sentence in each	pair and the
"ing" form for the other.	
1.a. I had nothing to do . I wasand lonely (bore	2)
1.b. I had only one book with me , but I didn't read	it. it was so
2.a. I enjoyed Dr. Brown's visit. He is a very speal	ker (interest)
2.b. We invited them to join us, but they weren't rea	lly
3.a. The bad news was very	(s.op. cos),
3.b. It was a bad day. We were all thoroughly	
4.a. I enjoyed the film. The monster was absolutely	(terrify).
4.b. We were told there was a bomb in the building.	Everyone was
absolutely	:
5.a. We were ratherwith the results (disappo 5.b. The results were very	int).
6.a. We were dreadfully late. It was very (er	nharrace)
6.b. George made a perfect fool of himself. He was	
7.a. Jack looked even morethan he felt (amaze	
7.b. She is a brilliant woman. She has the most	•
8.a. Have you heard what's happened. Isn't it	
8.b. Mary looked calm, but inside she felt really	
Ex. (42c) Complete these sentences using a	
adjective in each one :	
1. I have never heard a more ridiculous story.	
That'sI have ever heard.	
2. We had never stayed in a more expensive hotel.	
It waswe had ever stayed in.	
3. I had never had such a tiring journey before.	
It was had ever had.	
4. I've never had such a tasty meal before.	
It wasI have ever had.	
5. It's years. Since I saw a game as good as that.	
That's I have seen for years.	
못하면 그렇게 되었다. 물에 그리고 하라면 그렇게 그렇게 하고 하면 하면 하는데 그렇게 얼굴에 들어 살아 되었다.	

الظروف ADVERBS

دائما الظروف تصف الفعل وهي توضح كيف وقع الحدث. مثال ذلك :

The old man walked slowly along the street.

2. The little boy ran quickly.

3. The fisherman sat sorrowfully.

الظرف بإضافة (الله المضفة مثال ذلك :

The boy is a quick runner

They boy runs quickly.

2. The old man was a slow walker.

The old man walked slowly.

3. The girl's behavior was good.

The girl behaved well.

adjective

adverb

adjective

adverb

adjective

adverb.

يلاحظ أن good تأتى صفة للاسم فقط لكن الصفة للفعل هي well.

كلمات تنتهي بـ (١٧) وليست ظروف ولكنها صفات وهي

friendly, lovely, lonely, likely, lowly, elderly, cowardly,

deadly, lively, ugly, silly

high, low, deep, near, far, fast, hard, early, late, much, little, leisurely, kindly.

هذه الكلمات يمكن أن تستعمل صفة أو ظرف.

As adjectives

As adverbs

A high mountain

The bird flew high

The **near bank**

Don't come near, this may explode.

The work is hard (difficult) They worked hard (energetically) highly, lowly, deeply, nearly, hardly, lately.

لها معنى أقل من معنى الصفات المشتقة منها تستعمل ighly فقط بمعنى مجرد.

He was **highly placed** = he had an important office.

They **spoke very highly** of him = They praised him.

Lowly adjective means humble nearly = almost

حدیثاً Lately = recently

عاطفي deeply

He was deeply hurt = his feelings were very much hurt.

We use the words way/ manner to form their adverbs

She greeted me in a friendly way

٢- قليل من الظروف تخبرنا كيف ولكن عندما يقع الحدث مثال ذلك:

- 1. The wood man lost his axe yesterday.
- 2. We must come to school tomorrow.

٣- بعض الظروف تخبرنا عن المكان حيث وقع الحدث مثال ذلك :

I sat down there. I saw you somewhere.

Did you see my hat anywhere?

Where are you going? Nowhere?

Comparison of Adverbs

,more, most

١- عادة ما تستعمل

quickly fortunately more quickly

most quickly

unately **more** fortunately

most fortunately

er, est نضيف التي تتكون من مقطع واحد والظروف early نضيف

highest higher high hardest harder hard worst badly worse better best well least little less latest late later farthest farther far most much more

asas

استعمال الظرف: الظرف العادي يوضع بين:

not soas Or not asas

في النفي نستعمل

- 1. They arrived earlier than she did / than her.
- He eats more than I do / than me.
- She danced more gracefully than the other girls.
- 4. They went farther than the other runners.
- 5. He worked as slowly as he dared.
- 6. He doesn't work as / so well as you do.

of all

الظرف في حالة التفضيل القصوى نستعمل بعده

He ran fastest of all.

ولكن غالبا في الاستعمال السابق ما يشير إلى أعمال أخرى لنفس الفاعل فمثلا نقول:

He likes swimming best of all = better than he likes anything else.

She works **best of all when** she is alone=**better than other times.**

He likes swimming best

ويمكن حذف of all فنقول

عندما نوضع most قبل ظرف أو صفة فإنها تعنى very

She behaved most gracefully.

The Position of Adverbs.

موضع الظروف

1- Adverb of Manner (kindly - badly - well etc)

ا- الطريقة

تجيب هذه الظروف على السؤال (How) وعادة ما توضع بعد المفعول بــ المباشر اذا وجد وان لم يوجد مفعول به مباشر يوضع هذا الظرف بعد الفعل.

She painted that picture here.

و إذا وجد ظرف يدل على الطريقة (Manner) فإن ظرف المكان يأتي بعده. He played well there.

some , any يستعملان بنفس الطريقة مثل somewhere, anywhere I saw your hat somewhere, Did you see my hat anywhere? I didn't see your hat anywhere?

nowhere نستعمل في الإجابات القصيرة.

Where are you going ?Nowhere (i.e.I'm not going anywhere). Adverbs of time, then , yet , still ,now soon tc. ظرف الزمان هذه الظروف ظروف التكرار once-twice عادة ما توضع في البداية أو في أقصى النهاية. He is coming to - morrow. He is working now.

I have been there three times. Then we went home. He hasn't finished vet

yet يجب أن توضع في نهاية الجملة

ومن الممكن ان نقول He hasn't yet finished ولكن الصورة الأولى أفضل. Still عادة ما توضع قبل الفعل ولكن توضع بعد still She still dislikes him. She is still in her bed.

4. Adverbs of Frequency.

٤- توضع ظروف التكرار قبل أي فعل ما عدا To Be Sometimes, often, rarely, seldom, usually, generally etc.

He is always in time for meals.

They **sometimes** stay up all night.

في الأمثلة التي تتكون من أكثر من فعل توضع بعد الفعل المساعد.

5. Adverbs of degree (almost-nearly- quite - just - too etc) ٥- هذه الظروف تضيف صفة أو ظرف آخر قبل الصفة أو الظرف.

It was too hot to work. I know him quite well.

The film was fairly good. He played extremely badly.

توضع هذه الظروف قبل الفعل الرئيسي.Almost ,nearly,quite,hardly,scarcely,just I quite understand. He can nearly swim. I am just going. Enough. يأتى قبلها أما صفة أو ظرف.

He didn't work quickly enough. The box isn't big enough. only توضع أمام الكلمة التي نصفها سواء كانت فعل أو صفة أو ظرف أو تأتى بعد أسم أو ضمير. 1. He had **only six** apples. (i.e not more than six).

- 2. He only lent his car. (i.e. he didn't give it).
- 3. He lent the car to me only. (i.e. not to anyone else).
- 4. I believed only half of what he said.

The Meaning of Certain Adverbs of Degree

- 1. Fairly and Rather.
- . تؤدى Fairly & rather نفس المعنى ولكن Fairly & rather نفس المعنى ولكن good, well, bravely, nice.

بينما تستعمل rather أساسا مع الصفات والظروف الغير حسنة مثل rather أساسا مع

- 1. Ali is fairly clever but Ahmed is rather stupid.
- 2. He is fairly rich, but she is rather poor.
- 3. You did fairly well in your exam, but she did rather badly.

تستعمل أدوات النكرة a / an قبل أو بعد rather

This is rather a silly book or a rather silly book.

ويجب أن توضع أدوات النكرة a / an قبل fairly.

a fairly interesting lecture.

تستعمل rather قبل الصفات في المقارنة مثل.

slightly وتعنى slightly

Simese cats are rather like dogs in some ways.

The weather was rather worse than I had expected.

2. Quite.

وتعنى تماما عندما تستعمل مع كلمات مثل

full, empty, finished, wrong, right, sure, certain, perfect, amazing, horrible.

كذلك عندما تستعمل مع ظروف أو صفات مثل.

The bottle was quite empty. You are quite wrong.

It is quite extraordinary. I can't understand it all.

وعندما تستعمل quite مع صفات وظروف أخرى فإن لها تاثيرا يقلل من الصفة أو الظروف فمثلا quite أقل من good وهنا فإن quite تعنى fairly تقريبا.

كذلك فإن معنى quite يتغير طبقا للضغط عليها أثناء الكلام فمثلا.

quite good (weak quite - strong good)

الضغط يكون أقوى على كلمة good ويكون الضغط ضعيفا على quite فهذه العبارة تعنى أقل من good بشيء بسيط.

quite good (equal stress)

وعندما يكون الضغط في النطق متساوي للكلمتين فإن quite تعنى (إلى حد ما). quite good (strong quite weak good)

و عندما يكون الضغط قويا على كلمة quite وضعيفا على كلمة good العبارة quite العبارة good تعنى أقل بكثير من good.

3. Much

في الإثبات عادة يسبقها كلمة very

I liked it very much. I enjoyed it very much. Thank you very much.

ولكن much لا تحتاج إلى very في النفي

I don't like it much. I don't much like it.

It is much better to say nothing.

ويمكن أن تستعمل كظرف

4. Hardly, Barely, Scarcely.

can ومع الفعل any أساسا مع any أساسا مع ever أو ever ومع الفعل hardly any = very / very little / few.
hardly ever = very / very seldom.

تستعمل hardly مع can معنى (فقط بصعوبة)

- 1. I have hardly any money (i.e. very , very little money).
- 2. I hardly ever go out (i.e. very , very seldom go out).
- 3. I **can hardly** see the mark (i.e. the mark is difficult to see or I have bad sight).

no more than وعادة ما تستخدم مع صفات مثل no more than وعادة ما

- 1. He had hardly enough to eat (he was often hungry).
- 2. He was hardly sixteen (i.e. only just sixteen no older).
- 3. I can hardly see it (i.e. I almost cannot see it).

scarcely تربط بين barely , hardly في المعنى.

Ex. (43a) Put the Adverbs in brackets in the correct place in the sentence :

- 1. I go (in summer, usually, to Paris).
- 2. We meet (on Sunday afternoon, in the park, always).
- 3. I saw Salah (in the office, about an hour ago).
- 4. I have a cup of tea (in bed, always, before I get up).
- 5. I get up early (on Sunday, seldom).
- 6. He plays (well, in an important game, always).
- 7. We eat (usually, when we go to the theatre, out).
- 8. He spoke (very well, at the debate, last night).
- 9. He arrived (at the meeting, at eight o'clock).
- 10. We are meeting (to-morrow, at Kamal's house, at nine).

Ex. (43b) Choose the correct answer:

1 Some of the passengers were (badly,well, worsely) injuried.

وعندما يكون الضغط قويا على كلمة quite وضعيفا على كلمة good العبارة quite وعندما يكون الضغط قويا على كلمة good وضعيفا على كلمة good العبارة good.

3. Much

3

. j

1

في الإثبات عادة يسبقها كلمة very

I liked it very much. I enjoyed it very much. Thank you very much.

ولكن much لا تحتاج إلي very في النفي

I don't like it much. I don't much like it.

It is much better to say nothing.

ويمكن أن تستعمل كظرف

4. Hardly, Barely, Scarcely.

can ومع الفعل any ومع الفعل hardly أساسا مع any أو any ومع الفعل hardly any = very / very little / few.
hardly ever = very / very seldom.

تستعمل hardly مع can بمعنى (فقط بصعوبة)

- 1. I have hardly any money (i.e. very , very little money).
- 2. I hardly ever go out (i.e. very , very seldom go out).
- 3. I **can hardly** see the mark (i.e. the mark is difficult to see or I have bad sight).

enough - sufficient تعنى no more than وعادة ما تستخدم مع صفات مثل no more than وعادة ما

- 1. He had hardly enough to eat (he was often hungry).
- 2. He was hardly sixteen (i.e. only just sixteen no older).
- 3. I can hardly see it (i.e. I almost cannot see it).

scarcely تربط بين barely , hardly في المعنى.

Ex. (43a) Put the Adverbs in brackets in the correct place in the sentence :

- 1. I go (in summer, usually, to Paris).
- 2. We meet (on Sunday afternoon, in the park, always).
- 3. I saw Salah (in the office, about an hour ago).
- 4. I have a cup of tea (in bed, always, before I get up).
- 5. I get up early (on Sunday, seldom).
- 6. He plays (well, in an important game, always).
- 7. We eat (usually, when we go to the theatre, out).
- 8. He spoke (very well, at the debate, last night).
- 9. He arrived (at the meeting, at eight o'clock).
- 10. We are meeting (to-morrow, at Kamal's house, at nine).

Ex. (43b) Choose the correct answer:

Some of the passengers were (badly,well, worsely) injuried.

2.Please, speak (slowly, slow, more slow) I can't understand you. 3.He works very (slower, hard, harder). 4.He looks rather (strangely, strange, stranger). 5.He looked at me (strangely, strange, stranger). 6.He speaks English very (well, good, better). 7.I'm not (completely, complete, more complete) satisfied-8.He feels (unhappy,unhappily,unhappier) about the situation 9. Why do you look so (unhappy, unhappily, unhappier)? 10. He is (happy, happily, happiest) married. 11.He seems (angrily, angry, the most angry) although he spoke (quiet, quietly, more quiet). 12.He will behave (differently, different, more different). 13. Does he (usual, usually, as usual) speak so (well, good, goodly)? 14.Please don't drive so (fast, fastly, faster). Be, (careful, carefully, most careful). 15. He answered (perfect, perfectly, more prefect). Ex. (43c) Choose the correct answer: Ahmed drank water because he was thirsty. c) too much d) a little b) too many a) any 2. The room is untidy. d) scarcely c) hardly b) rather a) fairly 3. Well, I'm afraid it will be difficult. d) hardly c) quite a) rather b) fairly 4.. like ice-cream? b) Every child a) Every children d) Hardly any child c) All children 5. There are nice apples, how in a Kilo? b) much are they a) much are there d) too many are there c) many are there. 6. Your homework was good this week. c) hardly d) scarcely b) fairly a) rather 7. Mary is Salwa. b) a lot prettier that a) much more pretty that d) fairly pretty up that c) much prettier than

8. I gave her stockings	for her birthday.
a) a pair of	b) a couple of
c) a double of	d) a two
9. The little boy keeps the ins	ect in a
a) box of matches	b) match box
c) box match	
10. It's the I have eve	r seen.
	b) prettier
c) prettiest	d) very pretty
12. He needs a	
a) a few day's rest	
c) few days rest	d) a few days' rest
13. I'm afraid we'll arrive	사람이 하고 그 없다면 하는 그 사람들이 되었다면 하는 것이라면 하는 것이다.
a) rather b) fairly	그들은 하나 하는 것이 있는 것 같아. 그 사람이 있는 사람들이 되었다면 하는 하는 것이 되는 것이 없는 것이 없는데 없었다.
14. The kept me awal	
	b) fireworks' noise
c) noise of the fireworks	
15. Those are shoes.	
a) man's b) mens'	c) men's d) mens
16. There was not	traffic on that road last night.
a) a lot b) many	c) much d) hardly any
17. The garden will b	e closed next week.
a) children's b) childre	ens' c) child d) children
18. In a few the bell v	vill ring, I think.
a) moments' b) mome	nt's c)moments d) moments'
19. He hasn't got lugg	age.
a) many b) much	well thank you
20. How are you ? I am	c) quite d) hardly
a) rather b) fairly	ome
21. She has gone to collect so	c) fire woods d) wood fire
a) woods b) firewood	c) fire woods d) wood fire
22. I can't find the bag	b) everywhere
a) nowhere	d) somewhere
c) anywhere	u) Somewhere

23. I have a paper in	my desk.	
a) lot b) little	c) little of	
24. A lot of letters and cards	came to day,	but-for you
a) there wasn't anything	b) there w	asn't something
c) it wasn't anything		
25. Janet had furnitur	e for her rooi	m.
a) enough b) many	c) a lot	d) any
26. There are people		
a) another b) fewer	c) few	d) other
27. We have looked for		_
a) everywhere		
c) anywhere	d) every w	here
28. There are so many cars .	nowad	days.
a) for all places		
c) anywhere	d) for ever	ry place
29. It is the film I've	ever seen.	
a) most interesting		
c) more interesting	d) more in	terested
30 of them knew a		
a) Few b) Some	1 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	
31. I don't think we've met b		
		other person
c) some other		inother
32 he earns, the mo		
a) For how much		
	d) T	ne best
33. I've answered that		d) still
a) already b) yet		
34. We work for the sara) already b) yet		d) almost
35. I work I can.	c) sun	u) uimes
a) as hard as	b) as hardl	v as
c) so hardly as		프랑스 경기 아이는 아이는 아이는 것이 없다.
36. He was tired to g		

	mountain in the world	
37.	It is mountain in the world.	
a)	the most man	
c)	the more high d) the higher	
EV	43d). Rewrite the following sentences using	ng the word
	(s)in brackets to give the same meaning.	
1.	I play the piano well.	(good)
2.	I've qualifications in English teaching.	(teacher)
3.	Chinese is more difficult than English.	(easy)
3. 4.	A vegetarian diet is healthier than a diet with mea	at in it.
4.	A vegetaria	(as as)
5.	Small shops are not as cheap as big department s	stores.
Э.	Small shope are	(cheaper)
c	No city in Egypt is as crowded as Cairo.	(most)
6.	Playing tennis is more interesting than playing go	lf. (less)
7.	Eating out is more expensive than eating at home	2.
8.	Eating out is more expensive	(as as)
0	The naughty boy was given severe punishment for	or his bad
9.	behaviour.	(punished)
10	The bus takes a bit longer time than the train, bu	t it is a lot
10.		(The train)
4.4	I don't see why he got the job instead of me. My	
	restions are far better than his.	activities of
12	My new nieghbours are more friendly than the ol	d ones.
	그는 사람들은 그는 사람들이 살아가는 사람들이 되었다. 그는 그들은 사람들이 가장 하는 사람들이 되었다. 그렇게 그렇게 되었다. 그렇게 그렇게 되었다. 그렇게 그렇게 되었다. 그렇게	(
12	He is a more fluent speaker of English than I am	(speaks)
	My brother is slightly older than me.	(I'm)
14.	Value can't run nearly as fast as me.	(faster)
1 ~	My father is more intelligent than my blother. (3)	o as)
17	No man is as handsome as my father in our city.	(most)
10	No student is as active as Maged.	(mo.e)
10.	This is the most comfortable hotel I've ever stayed	ed in.
19.	This is the most comment	(No hotel)
20	I want you to be a more careful driver.	(drive)
21	Driving fast is the most dangerous thing.	(Nothing)
22.	My uncle is the most important man in our town.	(No man)
-4.	my uncle is the most important man	

23. We have never seen anyone more curious than Samy.

(Samy)

24. Nagi likes horses better than any other animals in the farm. (best)

25. February is shorter than any other month of the year.

(No month)

Ex43e) Study these examples . The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

I've never seen such a boring film.

It's the most boring film I've ever seen.

If you work more, you'll be paid more.

The more you work, the more you'll be paid.

She is taller than her brother.

Her brother isn't as tall as her/she is.

That table is similar to this one.

That table and this table are alike.

She's the quickest typist of all.

No other typist is as guick as she is / her. She's quicker than any other typist.

He's a terrible driver.

He drives terribly.

Tim has got the same number of books as Tom.

Tom has as many books as Tim.

This car is much more expensive than that one.

This car is far / a lot more expensive than that one. That car is much/far less expensive than this one.

Ann is very friendly to everyone.

Ann behaves in a friendly way to everyone.

He hasn't made as many mistakes as last time.

He has made fewer mistakes than last time.

Using the word given and other words complete the sentences so that the second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence. You must use between two and five words. Make sure you don't change the word given The first sentence is done for you...

1- No other gymnast is as graceful as she is.

(most)

She is the most graceful gymnast of all.

2-I've never heard such a ridiculous statement. That is I've ever heard.	(the)	
3-"She cooks well," Ann said. "SheAnn said.	(good)	
4- If you try harder, you'll do better. The you'll do.	(the)	
5-She is always respectful towards her parents. She always towards her parents	(way)	
6-Our house and theirs are alike Our house theirs.	(similar)	
7-She is the best singer of all. No other singer is.	(good)	
8-Don't buy as much cheese as the last time. (less) Buy the last time		
9-He is noisier than his brothers. His brothers are is.	(noisy)	
11This ring is much more valuable than that one. (f That ring is this one.	ar)	
12He is the best teacher in the school. No one else in the school is	(good)	
13My car is not so fast as his. His car mine.	(much)	
14Ann is the best singer of all. Ann else.	(better)	
15French isn't such a difficult language as Chinese. Chinese is		
16Sue is more patient than Emily. Emily isn't is.	(lass)	
17Sally dresses more smartly than Pam. Pam dresses Sally.	(less)	
18They arrived later than we expected. They didn't arrive expected.	(as)	
Inversion of subject and verb after Certain adverbs		

يأتى الفعل والفاعل في صيغة الاستفهام بعد ظروف معينة عندما يأتي في أول الجملة مثال: Hardly, Scarcely when, So, such, No sonnerthan, seldom, little, even less, nor. Neither, on no account, in no circumstances, not only, by no means, nowhere, at n_0 time, nerver.

, بعد ظروف تبدأ بــ Only

Only by chance, Only then, Only when, Only to day, Only yesterday, Only with difficulty, Only on rare occasions, Only by luck.

- 1. Hardly had he finished when somebody knocked at the door.
- 2. Seldom had I heard such a beautiful voice.
- 3. Nowhere did he make a greater impression than in Paris.
- 4. Little does he realize how foolish he looks.
- 5. Never have I heard such nonsense.
- 6. On no account must this switch be touched.
- 7. **Only by shouting** at the top of his voice was he able to make himself heard.
- 8. Only by luck could he score a goal.

Ex.(44)Rewrite the following sentences, putting the blacktyped words at the beginning and making the necessary changes :

- 1. He had **hardly** had his dinner when the servant came rushing in.
- 2. You know little of what goes on behind the scene.
- 3. You know even less what the teachers are thinking.
- 4. He **not only** showed her how to do it but offered to help her as well.
- 5. I have **never** in my life seen such a sight as this.
- 6. There has **rarely** been such a gathering of celebrities in our house.
- 7. You could **nowhere** find a better adviser.
- 8. I heard only by chance that his mother had died.
- 9. We have **seldom been** treated in such a rude way.
- 10. It has at no time been easier to enter a university than nowadays.
- 11. I only learnt the dreadful news today.
- 12. He became confused to **such a degree** that he didn't know where he was.

13. He did not hear a sound

0

4

ly

5

14. They did not speak a word

15. And he could not understand me.

(Not a sound).

(Not a word).

(Nor).

WORD ORDER

ترتيب الكلمات في الجملة

الجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية تبدأ بالفاعل + الفعل + المفعول به + ظرف الطريقــة + ظــرف المكان+ظرف الزمان ويمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بظرف الزمان.

time/subject+ verb / object + manner + place + time. - The children played games quietly in their room yesterday. or Yesterday the children played games quietly in their room.

Verb to Be عن الاسم الموصوف أو بعد They built a new school. He is intelligent.

الظروف التي توضح الطريقة توضع بعد المفعول به المباشر وأن لم يوجد توضع بعد الفعل مباشرة.

He studies his lessons well. He walks quickly.

الظرف yet يأتى عادة في نهاية الجملة و still بعد be وقبل أي فعل آخر.
 الظرف yet يأتى عادة في نهاية الجملة و to be بعد be الظرف yet الظرف المحالة المح

adverbs of frequency توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي adverbs of frequency من على تكرار الحدث sometimes, often , usually, always, seldom etc to be. وبعد He is always ready for work. He usually gets up early.

Ex. (45a) Rearrange to form sentences :

- 1. doing not finished have they yet homework their.
- 2. Saturdays me see comes to he sometimes on.
- 3. will my pen you gladly lend wish if I you.
- 4. on he quietly sitting that has been chair.
- 5. time-I have-your-sorry-I am-answer-had-to- not letter.
- 6. since in Rome have been quietly I living 1965.
- in the afternoon leaving they Italy are next week -Thursday - on - for.
- 8. To-morrow-homework finish your must before midday.
- 9. is highly his by colleagues he respected.
- 10. the baby me like I to hold for you would.
- 11. ago-went- fetch a few he upstairs a coat minutes to.
- 12. returned-friends-o'clock-to-hotel-with-they-their at eleven.
- 13. morning six arrived o'clock this she at Paris from.

- 14. partially for blame he to disaster is the.
- 15. generally as try I much possible evening the do in to as.

Additions to Remarks, Using Auxiliary Verbs.

Ex. (46a) Add to the following remarks using :

and so + the auxiliary + the noun / pronoun in brackets.

If there is an auxiliary in the first remark repeat this if not use do / does / did.

- 1. He lives in London (I) He lives in London and so do I.
- 2. He had to wait. (You) He had to wait and so had you.

1.	I have read it.	(Nagi)
2.	He is a writer	(She).
3.	Anwar can speak English.	(his wife).
	그 그들은 그 집에 가는 그리고 있다. 그 그 아이들은 그는 그들은 그는 그는 그 전에서 사람들이 되었다면 하는 것이다. 그는 그리고 있다면 그는 그리고 있다면 그는 그리고 있다면 그는 그리고 있다면 그리고 있다	The state of the s

4. She ought to get up. (You).5. He wants to help us. (she)

6. The pork was bad. (the beef)

7. The first bus was full. (the second)

8. I bought a ticket. (my brother)
9. You must come. (your son)

10. This bus goes to Heliopolis. (that)

11. I'm getting out at the next stop. (my friend)

12. He used to work in a restaurant. (I)

Ex. (46b) Add to the following remarks using.

and neither / nor + the auxiliary + the noun / pronoun in brackets e.g.

He isn't back. (She) He isn't back and neither is she.

13. I haven't seen it. (Mary).

14. You don't know the way. (your aunt)

15. They didn't use it (we)

16. He can't come. (his sister)

17. I don't believe it (Janet)

18. Samy couldn't understand. (Laila)

19. I'm not going. (You)

20. This telephone doesn't work. (that)

21. Ali's dog won't bite you. (mine).

22. I hadn't any change.

23. He didn't know the way.

24. My father wouldn't mind.

(the taxi driver). (anyone else). (my mother).

(Mary).

Contrary additions.

Ex. (47a) Add to the following remarks using.

but + noun / pronoun + the auxiliary or do / did / does. Make a negative addition to an affirmative remark.

e.g. She thanked me. (he). She thanked me but he didn't.

Make an affirmative to a Negative remark.

e.g. She can't eat oysters(I)She can't eat systers but I can. Use needn't at the negative of must, and must as the affirmative of needn't.

25. Nabil was seasick.

26. He wasn't there (she)

27. You must go. (your brother)

28. My sister can speak German. (I)

29. Alexander didn't want to wait. (kamal)

30. Magdy needn't stay. (Samia)

31. A cat couldn't eat it (a dog)

32. He will enjoy it (his wife)

33. The teacher hadn't got a television set. (his pupils).

34. This beach is safe for bathing. (that beach)

أنواع الجمل Kinds of Sentences

1. The simple sentence

١- الجملة اليسيطة

2. The compound sentence

٧- الجملة المركبة

3. The complex sentence

٣- الجملة المعقدة

الجملة البسيطة The Simple Sentence

تتكون الجملة البسيطة من فاعل + فعل أساس واحد + المفعول به.

Subject + Verb + Object

- The children played with their toys.
- 2. The Nile runs through Egypt.

Joining two Simple Senences:

ربط جملتين بسيطتين

adjective أو عبارة وصفية Adjectival phrase أو عبارة وصفية **One Combined Sentence** Two Simple Sentences

1. The boy is clever.

The clever boy answers well.

2. He answers well.

1. The soldiers are on the front lines, The soldiers on the front lines

2. They protect our country.

protect our country.

a participial phrase تعبير من أسم الفاعل

Two Simple sentences

One Combined Sentence

1. He had finished his composition.

Having finished his

composition,

2. He revised it راجعها

he revised it.

1. The day was hot.

The day, being hot.

2. I did not go out.

I did not go out.

a preposition حرف جر **One Combined Sentence**

Two Simple Sentences

1. This boy succeeds

This boy succeeds by working hard.

2. He works hard.

1. He wrote his composition. He wrote his composition without.

2. No one helped him.

help from anyone.

1 - باستعمال المصدر The Infinitive One Combined Sentence

Two Simple Sentences

He went to Tanta.

2. He wished to visit his uncle.

He went to Tanta to

visit his uncle.

- 1. The boy wanted to go to the cinema
- 2. He asked his father The boy asked his father to let him go to the cinema
- 1. I was unable to complete my work. I had not enough time
- 2. I had not enough time
 1. The man was weak.

 to complete my work
 The man was too weak to walk.
- 2. He could not walk.

Ex. (48a) Join the following simple sentences using different ways, the principal verb is written in black:

- 1. I was standing behind the door. No one saw me.
- 2. He ran to catch the train. He fell.
- 3. The clocks work by electricity. They are in the street.
- 4. I decided to act without his help. I was tired of waiting.
- 5. We walked along the street. It was busy.
- 6. The workmen went home. They had not finished their work.
- 7. The servant took a holiday. He did not ask me.
- 8. He sharpened the pencil. He used an old razor.
- 9. I felt sorry for the blind man. I gave him a plaster.
- 10. The floor was dirty. I told the servant to wash it.
- 11. He made many mistakes. He was ignorant of his work.
- 12. My watch has stopped. I did not know the time.
- 13. We blew up the ball. We used a bicycle pump.
- 14. The explorer has made a great journey across the desert. His aim was to discover the lost oasis.
- 15. The questions were difficult. Ali could not answer them.
- 16. He spoke slowly and clearly. He wished everyone to understand him.
- 17. You are trying to open the box. Can you show me?
- 18. The town was decorated. The citizens wished to honour the `President.

Ex(48b): A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1. Havinghis work, he returned home.
- c) doing d) do a) did b) done
- 2.with the result, he felt at ease.
- b) Satisfy c) Satisfying d) Satisfies a) Satisfied

a) work b) working c) worked d) works 4. I need your help. Don't leave withoutthe situation to me. a) explain b) explained c) explains d) explaining 4. The boy was stupid to answer any of the teacher's simple question. a) very b) so c) too d) such 6the task late, he hurried to the hotel to meet his friends. a) Finish b) Finished c) Finishes d) Finishing 7. The machinesin our factory are up-to-date. a) using b) use c) used d) uses 8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk. a) was b) being c) been d) be 9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c) blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d) repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve them.	3. They achieved good progress byday and night.	
4. I need your help. Don't leave withoutthe situation to me, a) explain c) explains d) explaining 4. The boy was stupid to answer any of the teacher's simple question. a) very b) so c) too d) such 6the task late, he hurried to the hotel to meet his friends, a) Finish b) Finished c) Finishes d) Finishing 7. The machinesin our factory are up-to-date. a) using b) use c) used d) uses 8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk. a) was b) being c) been d) be 9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c) blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d) repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	a) work b) working c) worked d) works	
a) explains c) explains d) explaining d) such explained b) such explaining d) explaining d) such explaining d) explaining d) explaining d) Finished c) Finishes d) Finishing explaining d) Explaining d) Explaining d) Explaining explaining d) Explaining d) Explaining explaining d) Finishing explaining d) Explaining d) Explaining d) Explaining d) Explaining d) Explaining d) Explaining explaining explaining d) Explaining explaining explaining d) Explaining explain	4. I need your help. Don't leave withoutthe situation to m	6
d) explaining 4. The boy was stupid to answer any of the teacher's simple question. a) very b) so c) too d) such 6the task late, he hurried to the hotel to meet his friends, a) Finish b) Finished c) Finishes d) Finishing 7. The machinesin our factory are up-to-date. a) using b) use c) used d) uses 8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk. a) was b) being c) been d) be 9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c) blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d) repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	a) explain b) explained	٠,
question. a) very b) so c) too d) such 6the task late, he hurried to the hotel to meet his friends. a) Finish b) Finished c) Finishes d) Finishing 7. The machinesin our factory are up-to-date. a) using b) use c) used d) uses 8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk. a) was b) being c) been d) be 9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being, we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c) blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d) repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	c) explains d) explaining	
question. a) very b) so c) too d) such 6the task late, he hurried to the hotel to meet his friends. a) Finish b) Finished c) Finishes d) Finishing 7. The machinesin our factory are up-to-date. a) using b) use c) used d) uses 8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk. a) was b) being c) been d) be 9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being, we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c) blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d) repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	4. The boy was stupid to answer any of the teacher's simple	ole
6the task late, he hurried to the hotel to meet his friends. a) Finish b) Finished c) Finishes d) Finishing 7. The machinesin our factory are up-to-date. a) using b) use c) used d) uses 8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk. a) was b) being c) been d) be 9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c) blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d) repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve		
a) Finish b) Finished c) Finishes d) Finishing 7. The machinesin our factory are up-to-date. a) using b) use c) used d) uses 8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk. a) was b) being c) been d) be 9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c)blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d)repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve		
7. The machinesin our factory are up-to-date. a) using b) use c) used d)uses 8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk. a) was b) being c) been d) be 9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c)blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d)repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	6the task late, he hurried to the hotel to meet his friend	S.
7. The machinesin our factory are up-to-date. a) using b) use c) used d)uses 8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk. a) was b) being c) been d) be 9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c)blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d)repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	a) Finish b) Finished c) Finishes d) Finishi	ng
8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk. a) was b) being c) been d) be 9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c)blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d)repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve		٠
a) was b) being c) been d) be 9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being, we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c)blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d) repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	a) using b) use c) used d)uses	
9. I will have a new suitnext week. a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c)blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d)repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	8. The weathervery cold, I couldn't go for a walk.	
a) make b) making c) makes d) made 10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c)blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d) repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	a) was b) being c) been d) be	
10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matter. a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c) blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d) repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve		
a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving 11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c)blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d)repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	a) make b) making c) makes d) made	
11. The road, being,we arrived very late for the meeting. a) block b) blocking c)blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d)repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	10. Don't let himthe place unless he tells u all about this matt	er.
a) block b) blocking c)blocked d) blocks 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d)repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) to leaving	g
 12. He will get his carthis week. a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d)repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve 	그는 사람들은 사람들이 되는 것이 되었다. 이번 가는 사람들은 사람들은 사람들은 사람들은 사람들은 사람들은 사람들은 사람들은	
a) repaired b) repair c) repairing d) repairs 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve		
 13. She fell whileto catch the bus. a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve 	그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그를 가는 것이 되었다. 그는 그들은 그는 그들은 그는 그들은 그들은 그들은 그를 가는 것이다. 그는 그들은 그를 가는 것이다. 그는 그를 가는 것이다.	
 a) run b) ran c) runs d) running Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve 	그는 그 그 그 그 그 그 그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그	
 Ex48c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve 	그 두 가는 생물 맛이 보고 있다. 그는 사람들은 보고 있다면 가장 아니라 하지 않아야 하지만 하지만 하지만 하지만 하지만 하지만 하지만 하다.	
(s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) 2. He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) 3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	CONTROL OF THE PROPERTY OF THE	一,
 They went home. They didn't finish their work. (without) He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve 		ora
 He was seriously ill. He couldn't work at all. (Being) She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve 		_
3. She sharpened the pencil. She used old razor. (Using) 4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve		
4. He played a tennis match. Then he had a bath. (Having) 5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	21.110 1140 001104011 1141	
5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	5. She sharperied the period and action	
(1-0)	ii iie piajea a terme matem matem	
them. (too)	5. The problems were extremely difficult. No one could solve	
	them. (too)	

The Compound Sentence الجملة المركبة

It consists of two simple sentences joined with certain Conjunctions such as تتكون من جملتين بسيطتين مربوطتين بأداة ربط معينة and -(both-and)-(not only - but also)-as well as - but - yet - however - nevertheless - thus - so - therefore - (either - or) - or- otherwise - (neither - nor).

1. And

تستعمل لربط جملتين متصلتين ببعضها الآخر

Ex. The boy opened the door. The boy walked into the room. They boy opened the door and walked into the room.

2. Both - and

a) Ali is clever.

b) Ahmed is clever too.

Both Ali and Ahmed are clever.

لاحظ أ، الفعل في الجملة السابقة تحول إلى جمع are لأن الفاعل أصبح جمع

3. Not only ليس فقط but also لكن أيضا

لربط جملتين بسيطتين والتأكيد الحظ إستعمالتها المختلفة.

a) He listens carefully in class. b) He works hard at home. He, **not only** listens carefully in class, **but also**, he works hard at home.

Not only - but also بدلا من as well as في الجملة السابقة يمكن استعمال He listens carefully in class as well as he works hard at home.

إذا استعملت Not only في أول الجملة يوضع الفعل بعدها في صيغة استفهام. Not only does he listen carefully in class, but also the works hard at home.

- 2a) Ali has passed his examination.
- b) Ali has obtained full marks.

Ali has **not only** passed his examination, **but also** he has obtained full marks.

Not only has Ali passed his examination but also has obtained full marks.

- 3. As well as وأيضا
- a) He spoke English well. b) He spoke French well. He spoke English **as well as** French well.
- ملحوظة : هناك أستعمال معين as well as أدرس جيدا الأمثلة الأتية :
- a) I am interested in music. My brother is interested in music too. I, as well as مثل my brother am interested in music.

لاحظ أ، الفعل am يتبع الفاعل الأول (I) في مثل هذه الجملة.

- a) She is fond of swimming.
- b) Her cousins are fond of swimming too.

She, as well as her cousins, is fond of swimming.

4. But-yet الا أن however – nevertheless الا أن whereas

أده ات تربط جملتين بسيطتين متناقضتين:

- a) Winter is cold.
- b) Summer is hot.

Winter is cold but (yet-however) summer is hot.

b) He was blind. He could find his way.

He was blind, however (but-nevertheless) he could find his way.

- 5. Thus-so-therefore-hence-consequently and. as a result, تربط جملتين بسيطتين والجملة الثانية تكون نتيجة للجملة الأولى وأى أداة تحل محمل الأخرى.
- a) He was very tired.

b) He could not walk.

He was very tired so, (thus-therefore) he could not walk.

a) She was sick.

b) She went to the doctor.

She was sick, consequently (hence), she went to the doctor.

- 6. (Either أو or أما or أو otherwise للاختيار (وإلا
- a) Yes must study hard. b) You will not get high marks.
- 1. Either you must study hard or you will not get high marks.
- 2. You must **either** study hard **or you** will not get high marks.
- 3. You must study hard, otherwise (or) you will not get high marks.

في هذه الحالة الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني Either I or he, is to blame. في هذه الحالة الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني

7. Nether y.....nor ye

لربط جملتين منفيتين

a) He cannot read.

b) He canot write.

He can **neither** read **nor** write.

- b) He does not understand the lesson.
- c) He does not answer the question either.

He neither understands the lesson nor answers the questions.

إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ neither يوضع الفعل بعدها وبعد nor في صيغة الإستفهام. Neither does he understand the lesson nor does he answer the questions.

a) He did not come early. b) He did not stop talking either. Neither did he come early not did he stop talking.

Ex. (49a) Join the following pairs of sentences to make one compound sentence : Don't use "And".

- 1. Ali works badly. He plays well.
- 2. He must obey me. I will punish him.
- 3. We come to school on Sunday. We have a holiday on Friday.
- 4. He is clever. He is intelligent too.
- 5. The pupil gave a suitable answer. He got high marks.
- 6. He worked much. He did not receive any money.
- 7. He must pay the money. He will go to priosn.
- 8. I gave him money. I found him work.
- 9. The gardener did not plant seeds. He did not water the garden.
- 10. He spent all his wealth. He robbed his brother.
- 11. He wrote fine plays. He acted in them.
- 12. He broke his promise He told a lie.
- 13. He must do the work thoroughly. I shall dismiss him.
- 14. My friend Salah is good at games. He is good at his lessons.
- 15. I don't believe his story. I don't believe yours.

Ex.(49 B) Rewrite the following sentences using the word (s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- 1. You must take the medicine regularly. You won't get better. (Either ..)
- 2. The thief robbed the man of his money. He killed him.

(Not only)

- 3. She sings beautifully. She also paints well. (as well as)
- 4.He has done his best. His brother has done his best.

(Both and)

5.A violent storm began. The river overflowed its banks.

(consequently)

- 6.My father has seen this film. He has read the book. (Not only)
- 7.Illiterate people cannot read. They cannot write.

(Neither)

- 8. The boy eats too much. He sleeps too much. (Not only)
- 9. The boy worked hard. He made progress. (and as a result)
- 10.I have visited France. I have visited Italy too. (both)

Ex49c) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d and

- 1- The bus was very late we decided to take a taxi.
- c) as well d) so b) however
- 2- He was rude, the teacher punished him.

a) vet

d) as well a) and as a result c) nor b) but

3- It was cold she wasn't wearing a coat.	
a) and as a result b) so c) nevertheless	d) as well
4. The lecture was very important lew students a	attended :
a) and as a result b) therefore c) yet	d) as well
5- Usama drives a car Adel rides a motorbike.	
a) and as a result b) therefore	
c) fence d) whereas	
6- She is both intelligent beautiful.	(
a) and b) but c) yet	d) as wall
7- I have never been to the opera and has my	COusin
a) but b) nor c) also	d) hence
8- I felt ill I stayed in bed.	a, iiclice
a) and as a result b) however	
c) yet d) nor	
9he does the work thoroughly or leave the job	
a) Neither b) Either c) Also	d) As well
10 did he visit London nor did he visit Paris.	
a) Neither b) Also c) Either	d) Both
11-Her room was in a mess, she had to spend hou	
a) vet	
c) consequently d) however	
12-You can either call her send her a letter.	
a) or b) nor c) otherwise	d) yet
13-Nagi is tall and strong.	
그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그는 그 사람들은 사람들이 그리고 그렇게 되었다면 하는데 그는 그는 그는 그는 그를 모르겠다면 하는데 생각하는 기술이다는 모든데?	d) both
14 the maths test nor the literature test were e	asy.
	d) All
15-Salwa might beat home tonight or she might	be at her
sister's.	D Il
a) either b) neither c) both	d) as well
16-The disco was very smoky we could hardly be	oreatne.
a) but b) however c) so	
17-He worked extremely hard he got a promotion	on.
a) therefore b) yet c) either	a) neither
18-John's flat was on fire he didn't panic.	
a) therefore b) nevertheless	
c) consequently d) as well	
19- His mother is French his father is Polish.	J) both
	d) both
20- He did his best he came last.	4) vot
a) and as a result b) therefore c) also	d) yet

الأسماء الموصولة The Relative Pronouns

who-whom-which (that) whose. as - but

الذي - التي - الذين - اللاتي (اللاتي)

الأسماء الموصولة تربط جملتين بسيطتين وتحل محل اسم مكرر في جملتين لتكون جملة واحدة معقدة.

1. Who (that)

للفاعل العاقل مفرد وجمع

1. The man served me. The man was standing behind the counter مكررة في الجملة الفرعية ووضع The man بدلا منها.

The man who was standing behind the counter, served me.

The boy succeeds every year. He is clever.
 The boy who is clever, succeeds every year.

I saw a fat man. He could not walk.

I saw a fat man who could not walk.

يلاحظ في الأمثلة السابقة أن اسم الموصول Who يوضع بعد الاسم الذي يعود عليه مباشرة ويمكن أن تحل that محل who.

2. Whom (that)

للمفعول به العاقل مفرد وجمع

That is the boy. I met him on Friday.
 That is the boy whom I met on Friday.
 يلاحظ في الجملة السابقة أن Whom وضعت محل him وهي مفعول به في الجملة الثانية.

2. I know that girl. You spoke to her.

I know that girl whom you spoke to.

I know that girl to whom you spoke.

يمكن وضع حرف الجر قبل الاسم الموصول أو بعد الفعل.

This is the man. I was helped by him.
 This is the man by whom I was helped.

This is the man whom I was helped by.

4. This is the gentleman, I meet him every day.

This is the gentleman whom I meet every day.

في جميع الجمل السابقة نلاحظ أن whom وضعت محل المفعول به أو قبل الاسم الموصول.

3. which (that)

للفاعل والمفعول به غير العاقل

1. This is the train. I came by it.

This is the train which I came by.

or. This is the train by which I came.

2. I like the song. Mary sang it.

I like the song which Mary sang.

3. I live in a house. It is surrounded by a garden.

I live in a house which is surrounded by a garden.

نلاحظ في الجمل السابقة أن which حلت محل الفاعل أو المفعول به غير العاقل ويمكن الحر أن يوضع قبل الاسم الموصول أو بعد الفعل.

4. Whose

للملكية عاقل وغير عاقل

my - his - her - its - your - their - our - 's

I know a man. His wealth is great.
 I know a man whose wealth is great.

The man became poor. The thieves robbed his shop.The man whose shop the thieves robbed, became poor.

3. We climbed a mountain. **Its** top is high. We climbed a mountain **whose top** is high.

4. I saw a girl. The **girl's** eyes are blue. I saw a girl **whose eyes** are blue.

نلاحظ في الأمثلة السابقة أن Whose حلت محل صفات الملكية.

5. As

تستعمل as كأسم موصول عندما تسبقها كلمة same أو such مثال ذلك :

- 1. Meet me at the same place as you did yesterday.
- 2. This is the **same book** as I bought.

في المثالين السابقين as تعني which لأنه تسبقها كلمة

- 3. This is not such a good result as I hoped.
- 4. I never say such things as you do.
- 6. But

يمكن أن نستعمل but كأسم موصول ولكن للنفي نفى(who-not) أو (which-not)

There is no one but regrets his death.
 There is no one who does not regret his death.

2. There is no plant but requires water.

There is no plant which does not require water.

that ولكن تستعمل the best وبعد which وبعد which وبعد

I know all that he said.

5. You can omit "that" "who" "which" when they are the object of the verb in the relative clause.

"which" أو "who" أو "that" عندما تكون مفعول به يمكن حذف "that" أو Example:

A) The woman **whom you met** yesterday lives next door. The woman **you met** yesterday, lives next door.

- B) The car which you wanted to buy, was not for sale. The car you wanted to buy, was not for sale.
- C) The thing which I really liked about it was its size. The thing I really liked about it, way its size.
 Warning تحذير
- 6. You cannot omit that "who" or "which" when they are, the subject of the verb in the relative clause. For example, you say "The woman who lives next door is very friendly. You don't say." The woman lives next door is very friendly.
- A relative pronoun can be the object of a preposition. Usually the preposition goes at the end of the clause.

1st. I wanted to do the job which I'd been training for.

2nd. The house that we lived in was huge.

8. You can often omit the relative pronoun that is the object of a preposition.

1st. Mary was the only person (whom). I could talk to.

2nd. She's the girl (whom) I sang the song for.

- 9. You can use "when" "where" and "why" in defining relative clauses after certain nouns. You use "when" after time or time words such as "day" "or" "year". You use "where" after "place" or place words such as "room" "street". You use "why" after reason.
- a) There had been a time when she hated all men.
- b) This is the year when profits should increase.
- c) He showed me the place where they were.
- d) That was the room where I did my homework.
- e) There was several reasons why we can't do that.
- f) The reason why I'm calling you is to tell you good news

Ex. (50A) Join the following pairs of sentence, using a relative pronoun. Don't use "that".

- 1. He told me a tale. I never heard it before.
- 2. Mary can solve her problems. She is intelligent.
- 3. The doctor examined the man. The man was ill.
- 4. I visited my friend. He was absent from school.

- 5. The police caught the thief. The thief robbed the shop.
- 6. Do you know the boy? I spoke to you about him.
- 7. Those children are in my class. You saw them studying grammar.
- 8. The man is the pilot of the plane. I was talking with him.
- 9. This is the plan. I came to London by it.
- 10. These two men were decorated for bravery. I am proud of them.
- 11. A man died in the street today. His name is unknown.
- 12. The boy walked slowly. His leg was injuried.
- 13. I never saw such bad work. Samy has done it.
- 14. This is the same story. Laila told it.
- 15. Meet me at the same place. You met me in it yesterday.
- 16. He only does such work. He is forced to do it.
- 17. The pilot has flown 10.000 miles. I went in his plane.
- 18. Mary has invited us to tea. Her mother makes lovely cakes.
- 19. The man was annoyed. The man's flat was robbed.
- 20. Here is the book. You asked for it yesterday.

Ex. (50B) Choose the correct answers :

- The man (who-whose-whom-where) I met yesterday, lent me some money.
- Ashraf (whom-which-who-whose) wife is ill, cannot come to the party.
- 3. This is the car (whom-whose-who-which) I use every day.
- Where is the hat(which-whose-whom-who) I wore yesterday
- 5. Here is the chair (which-whose-whom) is worth L 70.
- Mary is a good typist (whom-which- where-who) gets high salary.
- Mary is a good typist (which-who-whose-whom) the manager has great faith in.
- The horse(who-which-whom-whose) I selected won the race.
- Put it on this table (whom-whose-where-which) is conveniently close.
- Her husband (which-who-whom-whose) is older than she, is a bank manager.
- 11. The eldest son (who-which-whom-whose) work is in the army, is twenty four.

12. The eldest son (which-whose-who-whom) is in the army is twenty four.

13. I want to borrow a story (who-whom-whose-which) is

not too long.

14. All (which - whom- who-that) I have, is yours.

15. This is the best (who-that-whose-whom) I can do for

16. This is definitely the place (when - where - why -

whose) I lived.

17. Do you remember the time, (when - where - whose why) we got lost?

18. There must be a good reason (when - where - why -

whose) he was late.

19. They are building a hospital in the street, (when - where why - whose) we live.

20. Hisham is the one (who - whom - where - whose) car

you borrowed?

21. Can you give me any reason, (why - when - where whose) I should help you?

22. Nagi is the one (who - whose - where - which) desk is

next to mine.

23. This is the neighborhood (when - why - where - which) I spent most of my childhood.

24. The reason (when – why – where – which) Engy can't come to your party is that she has to study for her exams.

25. The little corner shop (when - why - where - which) I used to buy my groceries is now a huge supermarket.

26. What is the reason (why - when - where - which) Adel didn't come to school today?

27. Samy didn't realize that the restaurant (why - when which - where) we ate last night was your father's.

28. Do you remember the day (why - when - where whose) we first met?

29. Engy didn't explain (why - when - which - whose) she

didn't attend the meeting.

30. That's the island (where - when - which - whose) they discovered the ancient city.

الجملة المعقدة The Complex Sentence

العملة المعقدة تتكون من:

- جملة رئيسية principal clause و هذه تؤدى معنى كامل بمفردها.

۲ - جملة فرعية أو أكثر Subordinate clause وهذه لا يمكن أن تـــؤدى معنــــى

تنقسم الجملة المعقدة إلى ثلاث أجزاء:

1. Noun clause

١- الجملة الاسمية (التي تؤدى عمل الاسم)

ع - الجملة الوصفية (التي تؤدى عمل الصفة) 2. Adjective clause

3. Adverbial clause

٣ - الجملة الظرفية (التي تؤدي عمل الظرف)

الجملة الوصفية The Adjective Clause

هذه الجملة تؤدى عمل الصفة

Forms of adjectives:

أشكال الصفة:

clever boy-intelligent girl - wise man منة بسيطة عادية مثل - ا

verb + ing

exciting film interesting book

كتاب مسلي

عمل فيان صفة مثال ذلك : Past Participle - ٣

زجاجة مكسورة broken bottle - رجل متعلم educated man تمرين تحريري written exercise - سفينة غارقة

ويمكن استعمال مشتقات من التصريف الثالث لتكوين الصفات مثل:

an air conditioned house منزل مكيف الهواء

a talented composer من موهوب a narrow minded man رجل ضيق الأفق

؟ - مجموعة من الكلمات تصف كلمة واحدة مثال ذلك :

- 1. The pupils in the third year.
- The people living in Alexandria.

الجملة الوصفية هي تحويل الصفة أيا كان شكلها إلى جملة باستعمال.

الأسماء الموصولة + verb to be أو أي فعل مناسب + الصفة

ويسمى ذلك تحويل الجملة كلها من simple إلى complex

phrase إلى clause

والمقصود هو تحويل من

أنرس الأمثلة الآتية بعناية : Study very carefully these examples

1. The clever boy succeeds every year.

جملة بسيطة تتكون من فاعل + فعل أساسي واحد.

لتحويل هذه الجملة البسيطة إلى جملة معقدة complex أي لتحويلها من phrase إلى clause نصنع جملة جديدة (فاعل + فعل) من الصفة الموجودة باستعمال (الاسم الموصول

المناسب + to be + الصفة) فنقول:

The boy who is clever succeeds every year. complex / clause principal clause جملة رئيسية subordinate clause The boy succeeds every year, who is clever.

The wise man can solve his problems. simple / phrase.
 The man who is wise can solve his problems complex/clause.

٣ - وعند تحليل هذه الجملة نقول:

principal clause

subordinate clause

The man can solve his problems,

who is wise

 People living in Alexandria enjoy the sea. simple/phrase People who are living in Alexandria enjoy the sea.

complex/clause

People who live in Alexandria enjoy the sea complex/clause living المنابقة يمكن استعمال الفعل من to be الصفة أو يمكن استعمال الفعل من

4. The pupils who are in the third year must work hard.

Simple/Phrase

يالحظ في الجمل السابقة أننا استعملنا الاسم الموصول who ليصف العاقل.

5. I have read an interesting story. simple/phrase.
I have read a story which was interesting .complex/clause
عند تحليل الجملة السابقة نقول:

جِملةَ فَرَعِيةَ subordinate clause جِملةَ رئيسِية I have read a story, which was interesting

6. I saw a wonderful film. simple/phrase
I saw a film which was wonderful complex/clause

 Mary lives in an air-conditioned house. simple/phrase Mary lives in a house which is air conditioned.

complex/clause

We live in a house containing many rooms.

simple/phrase

We live in a house which is containing many rooms.

complex/clause

We live in a house which contains many rooms

complex/clause

ملحوظة : الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ ing وتصبح صفات تصف أشياء غير عاقلة. الأفعال في التصريف التالي يمكن أن تصبح صفات للعاقل فقط مثال ذلك :

He saw an exciting film.

He was excited when he saw the film. عند النّحويل من complex إلى simple أو من clause إلى phrase تحذف الأسماء الموصولة + to be أو الفعل المصاحب للاسم الموصول. وإذا كانت الصفة بسيطة (كلمة واحدة) توضع قبل الاسم الذي تصفه. أما اذا كانت الصفة مركبة (عبارة) فتوضع بعد الاسم الذي تصفه. 1. The man who is intelligent can overcome his problem Complex/clause The intelligent man can overcome his problems. Simple/clause نلاحظ في المثال السابق أن الصفة intelligent صفة بسيطة لذلك توضع قبل الاسم المه صوف عند التحويل إلى simple أو phrase. 2. I bought a suit which is made of wool complex/clause I bought a suit made of wool simple/phrase 3. People who are learned behave wisely. complex/clause Learned people behave wisely. simple/phrase 4. The man who was wounded could regain his health: complex/clause The wounded man could regain his health. simple/phrase 5. Students who are careless, are always punished. simple/clause Careless students are always punished. simple/clause Ex. (51a) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning. 1. Violent winds pull out trees. (which) 2. The students answered the questions which were difficult.

(Omit which)

- 3. The government decided to educate the illiterate people. (who)
- 4. The man playing the piano is my friend. (who)
- 5. The girl who has golden hair, answers well. (Omit who)
- 6. My friend bought a car which was old. (Omit which)
- 7. Our brave soldiers have freed our land. (who)
- 8. His broad minded though has helped us. (which)
- 9. Books which are written by hand are put in museums.

(Omit - which)

10. Minerals found in Egypt will help in developing the country. (which) 11. Hard working students always attain their ends. (who) 12. The passengers on this train escaped death. (who) 13. People like faithful friends. (who) 14. The carpenter repaired the broken chair. (which) 15. Clouds which were heavy caused rain today. (Omit-which) 16. Narrow minded people always face troubles. (who) 17. We admire their unconquerable spirit. (which) 18. Homeless children should be housed in healthy homes. (Who) 19. The goods which were in the shop window were damaged by (Omit-which) fire. 20. A useful book gives knowledge. (which)

II. Adverbial Clauses

1. Clause of Purpose

The conjunctions أدوات الربط أدوات الربط So that-in order that-in the hope that-that (لكي) so that-in order that أدوات تربط جملتين بسيطتين بينهما علاقة غرض أو هدف وتكون جملة واحدة complex أدوات تربط جملتين أن in the hope that أو in the hope that أو may إذا كان الفعل مضارع.

يأتي فاعل + might إذا كان الفعل ماضي + المصدر

He works hard. He wants to get high marks.
 He works hard so that he may/can get high marks.

في المثال السابق جملتين بسيطتين بعد ربطهما بـ so that أصبحت جملة واحدة clause أب so that he may / can get high marks ، الجملة

2. They went to Alexandria. They wished to enjoy the sea.

They went to Alexandria in order that they might enjoy the sea.

جملتين بسيطتين أصبحت جملة واحدة complex

clause تصبح in order that they might enjoy the sea الجملة,

3. He travelled abroad. He hoped to find work.

He travelled abroad in the hope that he might find work.

والجملة - in the hope that he might find work تصبح Simple التصبح Complex الحي so that التحديث أي جملة بها

اي تحويلها من Clause إلى Phrase

تعذف هذه الأدوات (أدوات الربط السابقة)+ الفاعل + may أو may بعدها وتضع بدلا to, so as to, in order to + infinitive

or for - with the intention of-with the aim of بهدف+noun ما verb + ing

He works hard so that he may get high marks.

complex/clause

He works hard so as to / in order to/to get high marks. simple/phrase.

or He works hard for getting high marks. simple/phrase.

They went to Alexandria in order that they might enjoy the sea.
 complex/clause

They went to Alexandria so as to/in order to/to enjoy the sea.

Simple/Phrase

They went to Alexandria for/ with the intention of / with the aim of enjoying the sea.

عند التحويل من Simple إلى Complex اتبع العكس Clause عند التحويل من Simple أي تحويل من Simple اتبع العكس He ran quickly so as to catch the train. Simple/Phrase He ran quickly so that he might catch the train.

Complex/clause

خشية أن Lest-for fear that

أدوات تربط جملتين بسيطتين بينهما علاقة غرض أو هدف وتكون جملة واحدة. بعد Lest أو for fear that يأتي فاعل + should مع جميع الضمائر + المصدر مثال ذلك:

- He worked hard. He was afraid to fail.
 He worked hard lest he should fail. complex/clause
- He got up early. He was afraid to miss the train.
 He got up early for fear that he should miss the train.
 complex/clause
- I opened the door quickly. I did not want to disturb him.
 I opened the door lest I should disturb him.

complex/clause

لتحويل جملة بها lest أو for fear that من complex إلـــى simple أي مــن phrase إلـــى simple أي مــن

تحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + should ويوضع بدلا منها :

so as not to + infinitive.

or for fear of + noun or infinitive + ing

- 1. He worked hard lest he should fail. complex/clause
 He worked hard so as not to fail. phrase
 or He worked hard for fear of failing. (failure) simple
- 2. He got up early for fear that he should miss the train.clause

 He got up early so as not to miss the train. phrase

 He got up early for fear of missing the train simple

 خلك عند التحويل من simple إلى complex المنافة مثال ذلك :
- He went with a guide so as not to lose his way. simple
 He went with a guide lest he should lose his way.complex

In case + present tense In case + past tense

Take your credit card in case you run out cash.

He took a jumper in case it got cold.

Note: We can express negative purpose by using:

a) prevent + noun / pronoun + from + ing form

She covered the sofa with a sheet to prevent it (from) getting dirty.

b) avoid + ing form .

They set off early in the morning to avoid getting stuck in traffic.

Ex. (52a) Join the following to make one complex sentence

- 1. He went home. He wanted to take rest.
- 2. They spent the day in the Barrage. They hoped to enjoy the fresh air.
- The students worked hard. They were afraid to fail.
- 4. She went to the doctor. She wished the doctor to examine her.
- 5. They kept the child in a warm room. They feared he would take cold.
- 6. The doctor cleaned the instruments. He was afraid the wound ىتلوث .would fester
- 7. He told me a funny story. He wanted me to forget my sadness.
- She answered perfectly. She wished to get the top prize.
- 9. We stopped using plastic bags. We wanted to protect the environment.
- 10. Nagi takes his bicycle to work. He wants to reduce traffic pollution.
- 11. The government has introduced stricter traffic laws. They want to reduce road accidents.
- 12. Hany offered me some flowers. He wanted to apologise for his behaviour.
- 13. We should recycle paper. We want to protect the forests.
- 14. I had a glass of water before I went to bed. I didn't want to be thirsty during the night.
- 15. They arrived at the airport three hours early. They feared to miss the flight.



16. Hassan called the police station. He wanted to report a breakin at his flat.

Ex. (52b) Change the black typed clauses into phrase and vice versa:

- 1. He went home so as to study his lessons.
- 2. They got up early so that they might enjoy the fresh air.
- 3. He disguised تتكر himself so as not to be recognised.
- 4. The policeman hurried in order that he could catch the thief.
- 5. The army marched quickly to surprise the enemy.
- 6. He saved his money lest he should fall in trouble.
- 7. The pupils listened carefully to understand the lesson.
- 8. He hurried to the station for fear of missing the train.
- 9.My uncle travelled to Europe with the intention of taking a degree.
- 10. Many of our soldiers sacrificed their lives so as to free our land.

Ex. (52c) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. We waged the war so that we could restore our land.

(with the aim of)

- We decided to conquer Israil to break the myth مسطورة of her army.

 (so that)
- 3. The boys escaped for fear of being punished. (lest)
- 4. He sat in the furthest corner lest he should be seen.

(for fear of)

- 5. I gave up sugar and butter because I didn't want to put on weight. (lest)
- 6. I came to live in the country because I wanted to have trees around me instead of buildings. (so that)
- 7. She moved carefully because she didn't want to wake the children. (lest)
- 8. She left quietly because she didn't want to make any troubles.

(for fear that)

 We covered the furniture because we didn't want to get paint all over it. (so as not to)

- I waved my arm because I wanted him to see me.
 (in order that)
- He wore a disguise because he didn't want his friends to recognize him.
- 12. Take your mobile phone. It is possible that someone may call you. (in case)
- She put her jewellery in the hotel safe. She didn't want it to get stolen. (prevent)
- 14. He checked the answering machine. There may have been a message for him. (in case)
- I always lock the doors and windows. I don't want to be burgled. (avoid)
- 16. We'll take some food with us. We might get hungry. (in case)
- I've bought some extra blankets because it might get colder at night.
 (in case)
- 18. She locked the money in the safe. Someone might steal it.

 (prevent)
- 19. She put on suntan oil. She didn't want to get burnt. (avoid)
- The doctor took his medicine bag. Someone might have been hurt.

2. Clause Of Result

أدوات الربط The conjunctions

$$\left\{\begin{array}{ll} \text{so + adjective or adverb + that} \\ \text{such + noun + that} \end{array}\right\}$$
 جدا

أدوات تربط جملتين لتكون جملة واحدة Complex

بعد 50 تأتى صفة وبعد that تأتى جملة (فاعل + فعل) نتيجة للصفة بعد 50

بعد such يأتي أسم وبعد that يأتي جملة (فاعل + فعل) نتيجة للاسم بعد

1. He is very strong. He can defeat his rival. منافس He is so strong that he can defeat his rival.complex/clause

2. He was very clever. He passed the examination. He was so clever that he passed the examination.

complex/clause

3. She was very polite. She respected everyone. She was so polite that she respected everyone.

complex/clause

بعد ربط الجملتين بـ so.....that تصبح جملة واحدة

- He is so strong that he can defeat his rival.
- He was so clever that he passed the examination.
- She was so polite that she respected everyone.

في الجمل الثلاث السابقة استعملنا that + الصفة + 50 وسوف نرى استعمال that + الاسم + such في نفس الجمل.

- He is such a strong man that he can defeat his rival.
- He was such a clever boy that he passed the examination.
- She was such a polite girl, that she respected everyone.

يمكن استعمال اسم بعد such هذا يلزم تحويل to be إلى to have مثال ذلك (مع نفس الجمل الثلاث).

- He has such strength that he can defeat his rival.
- He had such cleverness that he passed the examination.
- She has such politeness that she respected everyone. إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ (الصفة - 50) أو (الاسم - such) يوضع الفعل بعدها فـي صـيغة الاستفهام مثال ذلك:
- 1. She was such a polite girl that she respected everyone. Such a polite girl was she that she respected everyone.

- He spoke so clearly that I heard him.So clearly did he speak that I heard him.
- 3. She sings so beautifully that I admire her.

 So beautifully does she sing that I admire her.

 clause مبيع الجمل السابقة complex والجمل منها التي تبدأ بله that مثبته تعتبر simple بله so that أو من so that إلى so that تحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + الفعل بعد that المصدر + enough to + الصفة).
- 1. He was so clever that he passed the examination.

complex/clause

He was clever enough to pass the examination.

simple/phrase

2.He was such a strong man that he defeated his rival.

complex/clause

He was strong enough to defeat his rival. simple/phrase simple إذا كان الفاعل في الجملة بعد that يختلف عن الفاعل الأول عند تحويل الجملة إلى enough for + الفاعل الثاني + enough for + الصفة).

1. She was so polite that everyone respected her.

complex/clause

She was polite enough for everyone to respect her.

simple/phrase

2. He was such a wise man that people praised him.

complex/clause

He was wise enough for people to praise him.

simple/phrase

لتحويل جملة من phrase إلى clause أو من simple إلى phrase اتبع عكس الخطوات السابقة مثال ذلك :

1. This book is small enough to go in my pocket.

simple/phrase

This book is so small that it goes in my pocket.

complex/clause

2. We were **near enough** to see everything. **simple/phrase** We were **so near that** we could see everything.

complex/clause

عند تحويل جملة بها so .. that أو such.....that من complex إلى simple

أى من clause إلى phrase وتكون الجملة بعد that بالنفي تحذف هـذه الأدوات ، الفاعل + النفي بعد that ونستعمل بدلا منها (المصدر + to + الصفة + to).

1. He was so poor that he could not buy his food.

complex/clause He was too poor to buy his food. simplex/phrase

2. She was so tired that she could not work complex/clause She was too tired to work. simplex/phrase

عند تحويل جملة من simple إلى complex إي من clause البي phrase نتبيع عكس الخطوات السابقة مثال ذلك:

1. He was too lazy to succeed. simple/phrase He was so lazy that he could not succeed. complex/clause

2. They are too exhausted to continue. simple/phrase They were so exhausted that they could not continue.

complex/clause

Ex. (53a) Join the following pairs of sentences to make one Complex Sentence :

- 1. The aeroplane flew very fast. No one could see it.
- 2. The mountain is very high. No one could climb it.

3. The journey was very tiring. I fell asleep.

- 4. The flowers are very beautiful. It is a shame to pick them.
- 5. It was a very boring book. I couldn't finish it.
- 6. It was a very long flight. We had three meals on board.

7. It was a very pretty dress. I couldn't resist it.

- 8. They were very large boxes. We couldn't send them by air.
- 9. He was very fat. He couldn't get through the door.
- 10. I was very busy. I couldn't answer the telephone.

Ex. (53b) Change the black typed clauses into phrases and vice versa:

- 1. The child became so ill that he could not leave his bed.
- 2. He was honest enough for everyone to trust him.

3. He was so frightened that he could not move.

- 4. The enemy soldiers were so cowardly that they could not resist.
- 5. Qur soldiers were so brave that they destroyed the enemy.
- 6. They walked too slowly to catch the train.

- 7. The building is too high for us to reach it.
- Some people are so short-sighted that they cannot appreciate matters.
- The Pyramids are so strong that they will remain for centuries.
- 10. The moon is bright enough to read a book.

Ex. 53c). Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

- He was a dreadful liar. Nobody believed anything he said. (such)
- 2. It proved to be a very difficult problem. No body could solve it. (such)
- 3. We had a very good time. We didn't want to go home. (such)
- 4. The food was very good. We ate far too much. (enough)
- 5. His clothes were very old. They were falling apart. (enough)
- 6. They were so frightened that they ran away. (They got)
- 7. The children were so noisy that we could hardly hear ourselves. (too)
- 8. They obeyed him with such willingness that the strike went on for over a month. (So)
- So stupidly did he speak that. I didn't even bother to listen. (said such)
- 10. She got such a shock that she dropped the bag. (so choked)
- 11. He was so silly that no one took any notice of him. (too)
- 12. He spoke too quickly for me to understand. (so)
- 13. He was so old that he could understand everything. (enough)
- 14. He was so proud that he didn't apologize. (too)
- 15. The kitchen is too small for the whole family to eat in. (So)

Too / Enough

Ex. (54) Combine each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence using too / enough with infinitives:

- It is very cold. We can't go out.
 It is too cold to go out.
- You are quite clever. You understand perfectly.You are clever enough to understand perfectly.

- 1. It is very dark. I can't see anything.
- 2. I am very old. I can't wear this kind of hat.
- 3. I am very rich. I could buy your whole hotel.
- 4. He is very ill. He can't eat anything.
- 5. You are quite thin. You could slip between the bars.
- 6. He was furious. He couldn't speak.
- 7. Our car is very wide. It won't get through those gates.
- 8. The ice is quite thick. We can walk on it. (omit it).
- 9. He was very drunk. He couldn't answer any question.
- 10. It is very cold. We can't have breakfast in the garden.

(3) Clause of Cause

أدوات الربط The Conjunctions لأن Because - for - since - as

أدوات تربط جملتين بسيطتين لتكون جملة واحدة Complex

- He succeeded. He was clever.
 He succeeded because he was clever. complex/clause
- She stayed in bed. She was very ill.
 She stayed in bed as she was very ill. complex/clause
- He could not answer well. He was bad tempered.He could not answer since (for) he was bad tempered.

complex/clause

نلاحظ في الجمل السابقة أن since أو as تعنيان because وليس هما علاقة بالزمن. عند تحويل جملة بها because أو for أو since أو as بمعنى because من عند تحويل جملة بها clause أي من clause إلى phrase.

تحذف هذه الأدوات "الفاعل" الفعل بعدها وتضع بدلا منها:

because of / owing to / on account of / as a result of / due to/thanks to بفضل + noun or V.+ing or Being + الصفة

- He succeeded because he was clever.complex/clause
 He succeeded because of his cleverness. simple
 or Being clever, he succeeded phrase
- She stayed in bed as she was ill. complex/clause
 She stayed in bed as a result of her illness. simple
 Being ill, she stayed in bed phrase

عند التحويل من simple إلى complex أي من phrase إلى phrase نتبع عكس الخطوات السابقة.

1. He lost his way **owing to** the darkness. He lost his way **because it was** dark.

Being happy, she danced.She danced because she was happy.

simple/phrase complex/clause simple/phrase complex/clause

Ex. (55a) Join the following pairs to make one Complex Sentence:

- 1. He could not see. He was blind.
- 2. He was angry. He lost his watch.
- 3. he could not play well. He was not trained well.
- 4. He could not walk. His leg was broken.
- 5. He suffers from cough. He smokes much.

Ex. (55b) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. He failed because of his laziness.

(lazy)

2. Owing to his bravery, he defeated his rival.

(because)

3. Being tired, he went to bed.

(Being)

4. We could not study, because there was much noise.

(Being very)

5. As the day was hot, they decided to spend it on the beach.

(Owing to)

6. The boy was punished because be was careless.

(carelessness)

7. He was put into prison as a result of his bad behaviour.

(behaved)

8. Thanks to his intelligence, he could overcome his difficulties.

(Intelligent)

9. The travellers suffered a great deal as they didn't have enough water (lack of)

Egypt, being full of monuments, tourists visit it all the year round.
 (Because Egypt)

Ex.(55c): Change the black typed phrases into clauses and vice versa:

- 1. He was dismissed because he neglected his work.
- 2. He got high marks as he studied hard.

- Being experienced, he could choose the best kind of computers.
- 4. As a result of hard work, he got the top prize.
- Due to his mental abilities, he could solve the most difficult maths problem.
- 6. Thanks to her good manners, she was chosen the ideal student.
- The doctor performed the operation successfully because he was very skilful.
- The policeman was given a great reward as he was efficient at work.

(4) Clause of Contrast

أدوات الربط The Conjunctions

although - though - even though / if - however - whatever بعد صفة as

أدوات تربط جماتين بسيطتين بينهما علاقة تناقض وتكون جملة واحدة Complex مثال ذلك:

- 1. He was poor. He was happy.
- a) Although he was poor, he was happy.complex/clause
- b) Though, he was poor, he was happy. complex
- c) Even though he was poor, he was happy.clause
 Poor though he was, he was happy.ويمكن أن تُوضع بصورة أخرى.
- 2. She was wealthy. She felt-miserable.
- a) Although she was wealthy, she felt miserable

complex/clause

- b) Though she was wealthy, she felt miserable.complex
- c) Even though she was wealthy, she felt miserable.clause واحد even though/if. though, although استعمالهم واحد يلحظ من الجمل السابقة أن however بدلا من although ولكن يجب أن تأتى بعدها صفة.
- Although he was poor, he was happy.
 However poor he was, he was happy.
 He was happy, however poor he was.

 complex complex clause
- 2. Though the tree is high, he can climb it. complex however high the tree is, he can climb it. complex

He can climb the tree, however high it is. clause

٢ -يمكن استعمال whatever بدلا من although ولكن يأتي بعدها اسم مثال ذلك :

1. Although he tells lies, اکانیب he is believed. complex clause he is believed. He is believed, whatever lies he tells. clause الله whatever he said we all laughed complex complex

Whatever he said, we all laughed complete We all laughed, whatever he said.

: مثال ذلك although مثال ذلك as

1. Clever as he was, he could not answer. complex
Although he was clever, he could not answer. clause
Clause
Complex

2. Educated as he was, he behaved badly. complete Although he was educated, he behaved badly. clause

عند تحويل جملة بها although أو even though أو however أو however أو phrase أو clause أو chase إلى phrase . phrase تحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + الفعل بعدها ونضع بدلا منها.

in spite of / despite for all. notwithstanding / regardless of بالرغم من + noun or infinitive + ing

1. Although he was poor, he was happy. clause Inspite of being poor, he was happy. simple In spite of his poverty, he was happy. phrase

However careful be was, he made mistakes clause
 Despite his carefulness, he made mistakes. simple
 Despite being careful, he made mistakes. phrase

يمكن استعمال اسم الفاعل أي (ing + مصدر الفعل) إذا لم تعرف الاسم من الصفة:

3. Whatever difficulties he faced, he could succeed. clause For all his difficulties, he could succeed. phrase وعند التحويل من complex إلى simple أي من phrase الخطوات السابقة مثال ذلك :

Despite his politeness, they did not respect him. phrase clause

Ex. (56a) Join the following pairs to make one complex sentence:

- 1. The battle was fierce. We could win the battle.
- 2. The distance was too far. We could cover it in a short time.
- 3. The road was bad. They crossed it easily.
- 4. He was very hungry. He refused to eat.

- 5. We shall stay a little longer. It is late.
- 6. He behaved unwisely. He was highly educated.
- 7. He made the same mistake. I warred him much.

Ex. (56b) Change the black typed clauses into phrases and vice versa :

- 1. Though he has a car, he often uses a bus.
- 2. However strong be may be, he cannot bend this bar.
- 3. Intelligent as he was, he behaved wrongly.
- 4. Whatever books he reads, his knowledge is limited.
- 5. I will buy a car, whatever money it costs.
- 6. In spite of his strength, he could not fight two man.
- 7. For all his wealth, he does not help the poor.
- 8. Despite his courage, he escaped.
- 9. However violent the resistance was, we could conquer them.
- 10. Whatever mistakes he made, I forgave him.
- 11. Regardless of his serious illness, he went on working.

Ex. 56c): Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1- I heard him however low his voice was. (in spite of)
- 2- I could save whatever little money I got (although).
- 3- Fat as he was, he ran quickly (although).
- 4- Whatever mistakes he made, I forgave him (for all...)
- 5- However cautious he was, he fell into troubles.(in spite of).
- 6- For all his great efforts, he failed to attain his ends (whatever).
- 7- Although he has a good name, he faces troubles.(regardless of).
- 8- Clever as he was, he failed to answer well. (cleverness).
- He arrived on time even though he stopped for lunch in the way.
- 10. He died poor although he worked hard all his life. (hard work).
- 11. She finished the race though she had a bad fall.

(notwithstanding).

- Even though I have studied French for three years, I find it difficult to speak (in spite of).
- 13. Even though she is sixty, she's still very fit. (regardless of).
- 14. John is still very cheerful although he lost his job. (despite).

(5) Clause of Time

أدوات الربط The Conjunctions While-when (as) till-until-since-after-before as soon as - No sooner than. Hardly when - Scarcely when. أده ات تربط جماتين بسيطتين لتكون جملة و احدة complex تحدد الزمن. أدرس الأمثلة الآتية بعناية Study the following examples carefully (1) While (As) 1.I was studying my lessons. The light went out.حملتين بسيطتين While (as) I was studying my lessons, the light went out. complex لتحويل جملة بها while أو as بمعنى while من complex إلى simple أي من clause إلى phrase هناك ثلاث طرق: 1. While studying my lessons, the light went out. simple 2. Studying my lessons, the light went out. phrase 3. During my study, the light went out. simple كذلك عند التحويل من simple إلى complex أي من phrase إلى clause نتبع العكس مثال ذلك: 1. During my walking, I saw my friend. simple/phrase As (while) I was walking, I saw my friend complex/clause 2. Playing a football match, Samy fell on the ground phrase While (as) Samy was playing a football match, he fell on the around. (2) When (As) 1. The thief saw the policeman. Then he ran away جملتين بسيطتين When (as) the thief saw the policeman, he ran away complex/clause On seeing the policeman, the thief ran away. simple/phrase 2. The gardener dug the ground. **Then** he found a treasure. When (As) the gardener dug the ground, he found a treasure (clause) On digging the ground, the gardener found a treasure. simple/phrase كذلك عند التحويل منsimpleإلىcomplexأي منclause إلىphraseاتبع العكس On catching sight of the lion, he escaped. (phrase) When he caught sight of the lion, he escaped (clause)

(3) Till - until

1. They waited for me. At last 1 returned.

They waited for me till (until) I returned. complex/clause They waited for me till my return. simple/phrase

2.I stayed at his home. At last he came.

I stayed at his home until (till) he came. complex/clause I stayed at his home until his coming. simple/phrase

(4) Since

1.He has not sent letters since he departed. complex/clause
He has not sent letters since his departing (departure)
simple/phrase.

2.Since he died, no one has visited his family.complex/clause Since his death, no one has visited his family. simple/phrase

(5) After

- 1. After I had finished my work, I went home.complex/clause
- a) After finishing my work, I went home.

simple

b) Having finished my work, I went home. phrase

نلاحظ طريقتين لتحويل جملة بها after من complex إلى simple كذلك عند التحويل من simple كذلك عند التحويل من simple إلى complex أتبع العكس.

Having prepared my books, I went to school simple/phrase
 After I had prepared my books, I went to school.

complex/clause

2.After building the house, they lived in it. simple/phrase

After they had built the house, they lived in it.complex/clause

(6) Before

I had prepared my passport before I travelled abroad.

complex

I had prepared my passport before my travelling abroad.simple

2. They had studied the plans before they started the project.

clause

They had studied the plans before starting the project. phrase

As soon as بمجرد أن

No sooner-than لم یکد Hardly-when Scarcely-when

أدوات تربط جملتين بسيطتين حوادثهما متتابعة وأحيانا غير متوقعة ومفاجأة مثال ذلك :

1.I had reached the station. **Soon** the train left. جملتین بسیطتین **As soon as I had reached the station**, the train left.

complex / clause

2. He had left the house. We missed the jewels.

As soon as he had left the house, we missed the jewels.**complex** 3.He had arrived. He demanded a meal.

As soon as he had arrived, he demanded a meal

complex/clause

يمكن scarcely.....when-hardly.....when-no sooner.....than يمكن as soon as إستعمال مثال ذلك

- 1.I had no sooner reached the station than the train left.
- 2.He had **scarcely** arrived **when** he demanded a meal.

إذا استِعملت no sooner أو hardly أو scarcely في أول الجملة يوضع الفعل بعدهم في صيغة الإستفهام.

- 1.No sooner had I reached the station than the train left.
- 2. Hardly had he left the house when we missed the jewels.
- 3. Scarcely had he arrived when he demanded a meal.
- لتحويل جملة بها as soon as أو no sooner...than أو as soon as أو hardly..when أو simple إلى clause إلى clause إلى clause تحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + الفعل بعدها وتضع بدلا منها

immediately after / immediately on + noun

1.No sooner had I reached the station than the train left.

clause

Immediately on reaching the station, the train left. phrase 2.As soon as he had arrived, he demanded a meal. clause Immediately after his arrival, he demanded a meal. phrase

Ex. (57a)Join the following pairs to make one Complex Sentence :

- 1.I waited for a long time. At last he appeared.
- 2.We arrived at the football field. Then the game started.

- 3.He arrived at a certain time. Immediately I went home.
- 4.My father finished his work. He soon went home.
- 5.I studied my lessons. I went to bed afterwards.
- 6.He went away yesterday. We have done no work since that time.
- 7. They crossed the canal. Then they attacked the enemy.
- 8. The Egyptian soldiers had appeared. Immediately the Israeli soldiers disappeared.
- 9.I was washing my hands. The telephone range.
- 10. She was sitting at the table. Then the children came.

EX.(57b)Change the blacktyped clauses into phrases and vice versa :

- 1.I didn't know him until he spoke to me.
- 2.No one could believe him after he had told lies.
- 3. The sick pupil forgot everything when he sat for the exam.
- 4.He had not prepared himself before entering the exam.
- 5. Having prepared everything, they set out for the picnic.
- 6.No sooner had he met him than he informed him of his success.
- 7.**In doing your duty**, you should not be ashamed.
- 8. Hardly had we attacked them when they escaped.
- 9.Immediately after his reaching school, the bell range.
- 10. When I spoke to him, he was angry.

Ex.57c) Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1. I was getting ready for the bed when I heard someone crying (While getting ready)
- 2. When I heard the noise, I immediately telephoned the police. (On)
- 3. Immediately on hearing my report, they promised to send two policeman round. (Scarcely)
- 4. On seeing the burglar escaping, the policeman chased him. (When)
- 5. Having arrested the man, the police called for ambulance.

(After the police)

6. When they arrived at the hospital, they found the man had made his escape. (arrival)

- 7. No sooner had he heard the bell, than the burglar ran out through the back door. (Immediately on)
- 8. He hadn't cried since he was a boy. (boyhood)
- 9. I stayed there talking to them until I'd seen Nagi. (seeing)
- 10. I read the book before going to see the film.

(I had read the book before I)

- 11. Mary had been busy since she heard the news. (hearing)
- 12. I haven't given him a thing to eat since he arrived. (arrival)
- 13. Hardly had he asked the question when the answer came to him. (Immediately after)
- 14. As soon as the meal was over, it was time for rest.

(Immediately on)

15. He was detained last Monday after he had returned from a business trip overseas. (his return)

(6) The Conditional Clause

If-Unless

أدوات تربط جملتين بسيطتين وتكون جملة واحدة complex أدرس الأمثلة الآتية :

Study the following examples

Present

Present

1.If we put sugar in water, it dissolves.

2.If we heat iron, It expands.

عند التعبير عن الحقائق يكون الفعل بعد If (فعل الشرط) في زمن المضارع البسيط ، كذلك يكون الفعل الثاني (جواب الشرط) في المضارع البسيط أيضا كما المثالين السابقين.

a) If he succeeds, he will join the university. probable

١ - إذا جاء الفعل بعد If (فعل الشرط) في زمن المضارع البسيط والحدث محتمل الوقوع
 يكون الفعل الثاني جواب الشرط: (المصدر + shall أو will) مثال آخر:

- b) If he buys that car, it will cost him much.
- 2a) If he succeeded, he would join the university. Improbable If I could afford it, I would buy it.

٢ - إذا جاء الفعل بعد If (فعل الشرط) في زمن الماضي البسيط ويكون الحدث غير محتمل الوقوع.

Improbable يكون الفعل الثاني (جواب الشرط) (المصدر + should أو would).

- b) If I were a bird. I would fly.
- If I were as big as you, I would beat you.
- If I weren't so busy I would do it for you.
- c) If he bought that car, it would cost him much
- 3a) If he had succeeded, he would have joined the university. impossible.

٣ - إذا جاء الفعل بعد If (فعل الشرط) في زمن الماضي التام (مستحيل الوقوع)
 ١٤ الفعل الثاني (جواب الشرط)

(would have/should have +p.p.)

- b) If he had bought that car, it would have cost him much.
- 1. If he succeeds, he will join the university. الثلاث حالات لأداة الربط
- 2. If he succeeded, he would join the university.
- 3. If he had succeeded, he would have joined the university.

١ - يمكن إستعمال should بدلا من If في الحالتين الأولى والثانية.

a) Should he succeed ,he will join the university.

or he would join the university.

Should he buy that car, it will cost him much.
 or it would cost him much.

٧ - يمكن إستعمال were to بدلا من If في الحالة الثانية فقط.

a) Were he to buy that car, it would cost him much.

ملحوظة: يمكن إستعمال as long as j providing /provided (that) أو as long as أو as long as j providing /provided (that). If أو on condition that even if / only if / supposing or else بدلاً من on condition that Provided that the weather stays fine, we shall go for a picnic.

3 - يمكن إستعمال Had بدلاً من If في الحالتين الثانية والثالثة في الحالة الثانية تستعمل Had مع التصريف الثالث للفعل.

- a) Had I enough time, I would go to the cinema.
- b) Had I' enough money, I would buy a car.
- c) Had he obeyed me, he would have succeeded.
- d) Had he succeeded, he would have joined the university.

لاحظ في الجملتين (a) - (d) أن had تقف بمفردها وتحل محل If في الحالة الثانية ولكن في الحالتين (a-c) يأتي معها التصريف الثالث لذلك تحل محل If في الحالة الثالثة.

إذا لم If - not - unless

يمكن أن تحل unless محل If not مثال ذلك :

- a) If he does not succeed, he will not join the university. Unless he succeeds, he will not join the university.
- b) If he did not succeed, he would not join the university.

 Unless he succeeded, he would not join the university.

 were أ had أ should أ lf أو should أو had أو complex أو clause أو complex أو complex تحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + الفعل بعدها وتضع بدلا منها

In case of / With / By + noun (infinitive + ing)

- 1. Were he to succeed, he would join the university.
- a) In case of his success, he would join the university. Simple
- b) In case of his succeeding, he would join the university phrase

في الجملة (a) أستعملنا الأسم الحقيقي Success

في الجملة (b) أستعملنا أسم الفاعل (succeed + ing)

If he buys that car, it will cost him much. clause
 In case of buying that car, it will cost him much. phrase

3. If he worked hard, he would succeed. clause phrase

عند تحويل جملة بها if-not و unless أو should-not أو were-not أو wad-not أو had-not من complex إلى simple أي من clause إلى complex تحذف هذه الأدوات + الفاعل + الفعل بعدها ونضع بدلا منها: Or Without + noun j verb+ ing But for 1. Had he not followed the orders, he would have been punished. complex/clause Without following the orders, he would have been punished. phrase 2. Unless he studies well, he will not succeed. clause But for studying well, he will not succeed. phrase للتحويل من phrase إلى clause نتبع العكس مثال ذلك: 1. Without working hard, he would not succeed. phrase Unless he worked hard, he would not succeed. clause or If he did not work hard, he would not succeed. clause 2. But for my help, he would have died. phrase If I had not helped him, he would have died. clause or Unless I had helped him, he would have died. clause Ex. (53a) Complete the following: 1. If my parents had been richer,..... 2. The students would have passed their exam if....... 3. He will miss the train if 4. Had he a strong will,...... 5. Had it not been a hot day ,...... 6. Unless it is very fine,..... 7. They would never understand properly unless. 8. If I were younger, 9. If the weather were better,..... Ex. (53b) Change the black typed clauses into phrases and vice versa : 1. Had he not shown me the way, I should have missed the way. 2. They would have done it if they had known how. 3. In case of being very rich, he would buy a new car. 4. With his confidence in himself, he can overcome his problems. 5. Had he the strong determination, he would stop smoking.

6. Unless he had been cautious, he would have lost his money.

- 7. But for his intelligence, he would suffer much.
 8. With your permission, I will go.
 9. Without his help, I would have lost my life.
 Ex.53c) Rewrite the following sentences using
- Ex.53c) Rewrite the following sentences using words in brackets to give the same meaning:
- 1. Without money, we wouldn't buy our needs. (Unless)
- 2. Had I known you were coming, I would have invited you to lunch. (In case of)
- Hany will be at school next week provided that he has recovered. (recovery)
- 4. He didn't come yesterday so he didn't enjoy the party.

 (Had he)
- 5. Without practising harder, she wouldn't have become a good musician. (If it)
- 6. But for the terrible weather, they would have climbed the top of the mountain. (Hadn't it)
- 7. It's lucky we booked a room or we would have had nowhere to stay. (Unless)
- 8. You can borrow the money so long as you promise to pay it.

 (in case of)
- 9. You are not allowed to park in the school unless you are a member of the staff. (Without)
- 10.Icouldn't write to them because I didn't have their address (if)

(7) Clause of Manner

أدوات الربط The Conjunctions

(as if - as though) کما لو کان

- 1. He works as I order him complex/clause
 He works according to my orderssimple/phrase
- Answer the questions as I have taught you. complex/clauseAnswer the questions according to my teaching simple/phrase
- He answered as I instructed him. complex/clause
 He answered in accordance with my instructions.simple/phrase

as if - as though

- 1. He walks proudly as if he were a king. complex/clause
- a) He walks proudly like a king.
- phrase

simple

b) He walks proudly in a kingly way.2. He swam as though he had been a champion.

complex/clause

He swam like a champion.

simple/phrase

After "as if" or as though " you often use a past tense even when you are talking about the present to emphasize that the information in the manner clause is not true. You can also use "were" instead of "was"

Ex. (54a) Change the black typed clauses into phrases and vice versa:

- 1. He lives as his salary allows him.
- 2. He fought as a brave man should fight.
- 3. They carried out the project as he planned.
- 4. The child was like his grandfather in behaviour.
- 5. According to this book, Salah Eddin was a good warrior.
- 6. In accordance with the police orders, smoking is forbidden.
- The student worked as if he were a scientist.
- Use the paint brush according to my words.
- 9. The student of medicine was like a skilful doctor in operation.
- 10. He spoke foolishly like a mad man.

Ex.54b: Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. He was sleeping like a baby.

(as if)

2. You speak like your father.

(as though)

- 3. She treats him as though he were her son. (like)
- 4. She acts as though she owned the place. ("owner")
- (according to) 5. He behaves as his father orders him.

6. He looked at me as though I were mad. (like)

7. The bricks are made as they were in the Roman times.

(according to)

- 8. I like the freedom to plan my future exactly as I want. (wishes)
- 9. She behaves like a crazy woman, but she isn't

(8) Clause of Comparison

أنظر إلى درس صفات المقارنة وإستعمالاتها لتساعدك على فهم الدرس.

أدوات الربط The Conjunctions

(as-as) (not so-as) (than)

Study the following examples:

1. He fought bravely as the lion did. complex/clause

He fought bravely like the lion.

simple/phrase

2. He is as tall as I am.

complex/clause

a) We are equal in tallness . or We are equally tall	simple/phrase
3. He is not so clever as I am.	complex/clause
a) We are not equal in cleverness .	simple/phrase
or b) We are not equally clever.	
4. I am stronger than he is	complex/clause
a) We are not equal in strength.	simple/phrase
or b) We are not equally strong.	
or b) we are not equally strong.	the - the استعمال
: صفة المقارنة + the في جملة المقارنة توضع صفة المقارنة بعد	
يكون الفاعل والفعل بعد الصفة في الجملتين ، مثال ذلك :	
1. The more he studies, the better mark	
2. The more quickly we go, the earlier v	
3. The harder you work, the sooner, you	
4. The mistakes you make, the more make	
	arks you get
Ex. (55a) Complete the following :	
1.He received less money that	
2.I am not so old	
3.He does not work so well	
4. The more attention a pupil pays,	
5.The more quickly we run ,	
6.The thinner the man is ,	
7.The easier the question is	
8. He can writes as clearly	il and
Ex: 55b : Rewrite the following sentence	ces using the words
in brackets to give the same meaning	- 1
 Ali is not so intelligent as his brother is He wrote well as his brother did. He is as tall as his father is. He and his brother are equal in genero. He and his brother are equally short. The first film and the second film were no interesting. The son and his sister, are equal in clear 	(equally) (equally) sity. (generous) (as as) ot equally (as as)

(III) Noun Clauses

الأسم يمكن أن يكون فاعل أو مفعول به أو ياتى بعد حرف جر : عند تحويل الجملة من simple إلى clause أى من phrase إلى تحول الأسم إلى جملة أسمية بإستعمال أدوات الربط الآتية :

What-where-who-why-How-that-when-How many-How much-How wide, etc.

Illucii iloit titali	얼마나 나는 아들은 이 선생님은 그는		
Study the following:	أدرس الأمثلة الآتية		
1. His words, annoyed me.	phrase		
What he said, annoyed me.	clause		
2. His studies gave him great pleasure.	phrase		
What he studies, gave him great pleasure	. clause		
3. His failure, was unexpected.	phrase		
That he failed, was unexpected.	clause		
4. His generosity, was known to everyone.	phrase		
That he is generous, was known to every	one. clause		
5. Tell me your address .	phrase		
Tell me where you live.	clause		
or Tell me where your address is .	clause		
6. Can you tell me your birthplace ?	phrase		
Can you tell me where your birthplace is	? clause		
Can you tell me where you were born?	clause		
7. I saw the builder of that house.	phrase		
I saw who built that house.	clause		
8. I met the writer of this book.	phrase		
I met who wrote this book.	clause		
9. No one knows the reason of his absence			
No one knows why he was absent.	clause		
10. The doctor discovered the cause of his it	llness phrase		
The doctor discovered why he was ill.	clause		
11. He told me the time of his arrival.	phrase		
He told me when he arrived.	clause		
12. The teacher does not know the number of pupils in class.			
	pharse		
The teacher does not know how many pupils there are in class			
	The state of the s		

clause

13. She knows the way of making cakes.	phrase
She knows how to make cakes.	phrase
She knows how she makes cakes.	clause
14. He knew how to solve the problem.	phrase
He knew the way of solving the problem.	phrase
He knew how he can solve the problem.	clause
15. We hope for his success.	phrase
We hope that he succeeds.	clause
16. He spoke of his feeling.	phrase
He spoke of what he feels.	clause
17. Do you know the width of the street?	phrase
Do you know how wide the street is ?	clause
18. Can you tell me the depth of the river?	phrase
Can you tell me how deep the river is?	clause
19. Do you know the cost of this book?	phrase
Do you know how much this book costs?	clause
Phras الي Clause نتبع عكس الخطوات السابقة.	التحويل من ع

Ex. (56a) Change the black typed claused into phrases and vice versa:

- Tell me why you were absent.
- 2. I do not know the time of the flood.
- It is essential to think before acting.
- 4. Most of the members repeated what he said.
- 5. He seems that he is glad.
- 6. The policeman knew the place of the crime.
- 7. Do you know the cost of this house.
- 8. His arrival tomorrow is certain.
- 9. Bring what you need with you.
- 10. We know the designer of the house.

Ex (56b) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning

1.	We must hope for his recovery.	(recover)
2.	Don't forget where you will examine.	(place)
3.	He spoke a long time of his sufferings.	(what)
4.	I am sure of the usefulness of this book.	(useful)
5.	The patient hoped that he recovers quickly.	(quick)

- His young age was evident واضع to all. (That) 6.
- That he was intelligent ,was clear to everyone (intelligence) 7.

Tell me the number of boys in this class. (how many)

Ex. (56c) General objective test on Clauses and Phrases :

1. If you knocked at the door, they (will-would-can-would have) let you in.

2. If you tell the truth, I (will give-would give- could give-

would have given) you a prize.

- 3. Were he to listen more carefully, he (would't make-would make-won't make-wouldn't have made) mistakes.
- 4. I shan't play tennis to day if it (rains-rained-will rain-rain).
- 5. We shall eat (whichever-whoever-whatever- wherever) is left over from lunch.
- 6. Give it to (which ever-whoever-whatever-however) asks for it.
- 7. Put it (whichever-whatever-however-wherever) you like.
- 8. Choose (whichever-however-whatever-wherever) of the colours suits you.

9. Without the Nile, Egypt (will be - would be - can be - would

have been) a desert.

10. He would not have behaved like that if he (had-have hadhas had-had had) a good education.

11. They would have done it if they (knew-would know-have

known-had known).

- Unless the window (had been was being- was is) open-the thief wouldn't have entered the house.
- Had they more money, they (will build-would build would build-would have built) a bigger house.

14. They could never understand quickly unless they (listenwould listen-listened-had listened) carefully.

15. We shall never arrive in time unless we (hurry-will hurryhurried-had hurried).

16. Were be to write in ink, it (will be -can be- would bewould have been) easier to read.

17. Take care or else you (fall-would fall-will fall-fell).

18. Put on your coat or else you (catch-will catch-would cutch-caught) cold.

19. Should the train be late, I (shall take-take-took-should

have taken) the bus.

20. The pupils were (so-very-enough-too) eager that they asked for extra work.

21. So clever (is he - were he - he was - was he) that he could speak six foreign languages.

22. (Whatever-However-Although-As) he was still twenty, he

could speak six foreign languages.

 The harder you work, the (most-least-more-less) knowledge you gain.

24. The weather was (hot enough-very hot-enough hot-too

hot) for us to swim in the sea.

- Our neighbour walks as if he (is-has been-will be-were) a turkey.
- Blind (however-although-as-whatever) he was, he could know his way.

27. The room is (very large-enough large-too large-large enough) for you.

- Such (determined-determination-determining-determine)
 had our soldiers that they destroyed the enemy camps.
- 29. (Owing to-Since-Because-As) his bravery, he could storm the enemy's camp.
- 30. (In spite of-Without-But for-With) his stupidity, he behaved sensibly.
- 31. He was humble (for all-although-whatever-however), wealthy he was.
- (Regardless of-Despite-Whatever-Though) money he has, he feels miserable.
- Those two boys are (equal-equally-rather-equal in) in tallness.
- 34. This is all (what-which-who-that) I wish.
- 35 (According to-Due to-Owing to-As) his words, Nagi is the best.
- 36. (On account of-Due to-For all- In accordance with) his wishes, we must return to-morrow.
- (According to-For all-Owing to- Because) his illness, he could not be present.
- 38. (By-Without-As a result) woking harder, he would earn more.
- 39. He was (too-such-very-so) fat to get through the door.
- 40. They are (such-very-so-too) big cars that they use a lot of petrol.
- 41. (No sooner-Until-As soon as-While) he returned home, rain began.

- 42. Scarcely had he touched the wire, (than-when-that-till) he got a shock.
- 43. He ran (very-such-so-too) quickly for me to catch him.
- 44. I waited for a long time (when-then-that-till) he appeared.
- 45. No sooner (did he win-he could win-he won-had he won) the prize than he bought a car.
- 46. So skilful (was the doctor-the doctor was- had the doctoris the doctor) that he could save the patient.
- 47 He didn't dare to leave his hiding place (so that-for fear oflest – in case of) he should be caught.
- 48. We camped there (because-when-although-lest) it was too dark to go on.
- 49. They have moved house three times (when-till-since-if) they got married.
- 50. (However-Whatever-Even if-In spite of) you don't like him, you still be polite.

The Use of Capital Letters

Capital letters are used at the beginning of :

Names of persons, cities, towns, countries, regions, rivers, mountains, seas :

Ahmed-Magdi-Cairo-New York-Iraq-Egypt-The Sudan-The Arab Republic of Egypt-The Nile-The Euphrates-The Mokattam Hills-The Mediterranean Sea-The Red Sea.

2. Adjectives formed from proper nouns :

Egyptian-Syrian-English-German-Russian-etc.

- 3. The first letter of the first word of every new sentence.
- 4. The first word of a quotation :

He said to me, "Please lend me your book".

5. The names of months, days of the week and festivals :

Jenuary-February-March-April-May, etc.

Saturday-Sunday-Monday-Tuesday, etc.

Ramadan-Christmas-Sham El Nessem.

6. Titles القاب of offices and descriptive titles.

رئيس الجمهورية The President

نائب رئيس الجمهورية The Vice President

The Minister of Education: وزير التربية والتعليم

Dr. Kamel-Mr. Adly-Mr. Ramzy-Profeessor Magdi.

7. Forms of addresses in letters :

Dear Sir-Dear Miss-Dear Friend, etc.

8. Titles of books, newspapers, magazines;

The Citadel-Cleoparta - El Ayam. etc.

Al Ahram-The Egyptian Gazette. The Times. etc.

9. The word "God" and Pronouns that stands for it:

We pray to "God" so that "He" may help us.

The Use Of Punctuation Marks

The use of Commas (,).

I bought two shirts, a pair of shoes, half a dozen handkerchiefs

b) To separate clauses or phrases from the rest of the sentence Our headmaster, Mr. Ahmed, is absent today.

Although he was poor, he was happy.

c) Before the quotations:

I said to Ali, "Where did you live?"

d) In letters after salutation:

Dear Mr. Smith, Dear uncle,

2. The use of Full Stop (.):

a) At the end of a statement I found my lost book.

b) After abbreviations, the first letters in names:

A.R.E. - U.S.A. - A.H. Salem - M.A. El Sadat.

3. The colon (:): It is used before the quotation or before a list

The tourist exclaimed: "What a great Pyramid".

I telephoned the grocer and order the following:

a packet of tea, half a pound of butter and two kilos of sugar.

4. The question mark (?): It is used after a question.

1. Where do you live? 2. Have you seen the new film?

5.The exclamation mark (!): It is used to express a strong

feeling: Hurrah! Our team has won (feeling of joy).

Alas! The poor child is homeless (strong feeling of sorrow).

My dear! I am delighted to see you (strong feeling of joy).

6. The Quotation Marks (" "):

a) To enclose direct quotations.

I said to my friend, "What is the time now?"

b)To enclose titles of books, plays, newspapers and magazines.

"Al Akhbar" is published in Cairo.

"Al Mossawar" is an illustrated weekly.

أسم مسرحية ?"Have you read "Hamlet

Ex. (57) Punctuate the following, using capital letters when necessary:

- 1. the day after christmas george called on the egyptian museum.
- 2. i started to learn german in january last yea.
- 3. pray to god because he only can help you.
- 4. the swiss have been expert watchmakers.
- 5. el-ayam is written by dr. taha hussain.
- 6. mr. fawzy is flying to rome by boac on the Thursday after ramadan.

- 7. my uncle Salah wanted to visit aswan in December.
- 8. the game being over the spectators returned home.
- 9. turning my head I could see the thief running.
- 10. whether you travel by sea air or rail you must tell me.
- 11. this is what i want a girl who answers the telephone.
- 12. never he said i shall never agree to that.
- 13. it only costs six pounds he said would you like one.
- 14. good heavens no he cried that is quite impossible.
- 15. These are the things we need coffee sandwiches and some fruit.
- 16. give it to me immediately he demanded no she replied I refuse.
- 17. hurrah we have conquered them said the soldier.
- 18. alas she cried I have lost my child.
- 19. akher saa is an illustrated weekly.
- 20. i said to ali how wonderful your watch is.

حروف الجر Prepositions

I- Prepositions of Time

1. "At"

تستعمل كتحديد دقيق لزمن. مثال ذلك.

At this moment - at three o'clock-at Christams.

2. "In"

تستعمل عادة لتحديد زمن المستقبل

وتستعمل مع فصول السنة والسنين وأجزاء من اليوم والشهر. مثال ذلك :

In two months' time-in 1978-in January-in the morning-in spring-in winter.

- تستعمل لتوضيح توقيت متأخر سبقها عند الحديث. وتستعمل مع المستقبل "By". He will probably arrive by 6 o'clock.
- 4. "For" التحديد فترة من الوقت وتستعمل مع زمن المضارع التام I have lived here for three years.
- "Since" (مضارع تام) الماضى و لا يزال في الحاضر (مضارع تام)
 I have lived here since 1952.
- 6. "On"

مع توقيت عام بخلاف at التي تأتي مع توقيت تحدد عادة تأتي مع الأيام والتواريخ. مثال ذلك:

On Wednesday-on March 5th-on a Friday afternoon-on his birthday.

7. "From" وغيرهم الماضى والمستقبل وغيرهم المستقبل المعالمة المعال

Ex. (58a) Supply the missing preposition :
1. I will meet you there six o'clock sharp.
2. It will be over five minutes.
3. He has been waiting therefive o'clock.
4. The family are gathering againChristmas.
5. He still comes to see me time to time.
6. He always goes to visit her auntSaturdays.
7. The dinner should be over ten o'clock.
8. It always gets cool here the evening.
9. They may arrive any time.
10 January 1st there has been no work in the factory.
11. We are going to try to set offdaybreak.
12. Wait a minute. He should be here a few minutes.
13. They may arriveany time now.
14. He was in hospitalJanuary until June.
(2) "Between" and "among".
1. "Between" is used with.
a) Two persons and things.
He stood between his son and daughter .
b) Any two of a larger number.
He walked across the garden between the flower beds.
c) The speaker and a group.
Ladies and Gentleman! Between ourselves, I have
2. "Among" is used with more than two people or things and has
a less exact meaning of place. e.g. life among the Eskimos.
Ex. (58b) Supply the missing prepositions:
1. I was sittingtwo sisters when the bell rang.
2. She divided the cakeher five children.
3. I can't see any difference these two books.
4. She gave him a pound of apples, but there wasn't a good
onethem.
5. She hid the bushes at the bottom of the garden.
6. I have invited Tamerthe others.
7. War has just broken outthe two countries.
8. That family is always quarrellingthemselves.
9. confidentially and ourselves, I can't stand here.
10. The railway line runs the river and the road.
(3) "At" and "In" in phrases of place.
"At" is used to show the exact point: houses. stations small
na na na para de de de de la compansión de

"In" has the idea of within a larger area.

- 1. I was standing in the street when the storm broke.
- 2. She waited half an hour at the corner of the street.

Ex. (58c) Supply the missing propositions:

- 1. You will find our house the end of the next street.
- 2. It is strictly forbidden to park.....the middle of the street.
- 3. Why does she prefer to sit.....the back of the class?
- 4. They kept their radio......the corner of the room.
- 5. You will find it much more expensive living...London than.... Paris.

(4) Preposition of Direction Towards:

"for" "at" "to" "against" "towards".

"For" is used for direction when the verb indicates the beginning of a movement.

I left for home. They set off for London.

"Against", has the meaning of pressure or contact.

She threw it against the wall. The crowd pressed against the fence.

"At" is generally used with certain verbs.

aim at - point at - look at - stare at - throw at.

"Towards" has the sense of direction الإنجاء while "to" generally that of destination مكان الوصول.

They went towards the scene of the crash but were stopped by the policeman.

They went to the scene of the crash to see what help they could give.

Ex. (58d) Supply the missing prepositions:

- I shall come.....your house at four o'clock.
- He leaned..... me and whispered in my ear.
- The train......Alexandria leaves in two minutes.
- 4. He aimed the rifle straight his enemy.
- 5. Don't laughme, I am doing my best.
- 6. Just have a look......this if you please!.
- 7. It was getting late, so we set offhome.
- 8. They were heading.....the north when the pilot changed course.
- The country seems to be moving.....war.
- 10. I shall fight.....this measure until my dying day.

(5)Preposition of Direction from: "From"-"of"-"Off"-Out of

1. "From" is used with the point of departure.

They ran from the scene of the cinema.

- 2. "Of" is only used in fixed expressions with the sense of from. Ex. Die of, made of, ask of, expect of. 3."Off"has the meaning from the surface of and also down from. Take the book off the table. He fell off his horse. 4."Out of" means from the interior and has into as an opposite. He took his handkerchief out of his pocket.
- Ex. (58e) Supply the missing propositions :
- 1. Wipe the dust.....the table.
- 2. I am trying to wash the stain......your shirt.
- 3. He took the toy.....his sister, and played with it himself.
- 4. Have you heard......your friends recently.
- 5. He is a bad rider. He is always falling......his bicycle.
- It is difficult to keep the dogs.....the flower beds.
- 7. Take your elbows......the table and sit up.
- 8. She is so attractive, he can't keep away.....her.
- 9. This ring is made......gold and yours is silver.
- 10. Poor Mary! She is suffering a nasty cold.

(6) "In" "With" & "Of" describing people and their clothes

- "In" is used with everything (clothes, jewellery, etc) actually worn on the body. A girl in a red dress. A woman in gold ear rings.
- 2. "With" is used with anything which is carried: A lady with a black handbag. A man with an umbrella.
- 3. "With" is used with physical features and peculiarities,
- diseases). (i.e. (b) A boy with a limp. (a) A man with a red hair,
- 4. "Of" is used with permanent qualities of character.

A man of violent temper. A man of fifty-three.

Note: "With" can also be used with qualities of character but in general suggests less permanent conditions. A man of common sense. A man with common sense.

Ex. (58f) Add the suitable prepositions:

- 1. A young fellow....a broken leg. 2. A woman great wealth.
- 3. Some peasants......their national dress.
- 4. A porter...a bundle on his back 5. An old man...red beard.
- 6. Four young menpleasant appearance......grey suits.
- 7. A girl about sixteen..... a pearl necklace.
- 8. He is a man......considerable achievements.

9. That man bald head and only one arm is an old soldier.

10. That lady.....red.....a shopping basket is my sister.

Phrasal Verbs

(1) Do Make

to do his best بيرتب to make the beds بيرتب

to do the homework to make noise

to make a promise جميل - معروف

to do a job to make trouble

to do the work to make a mistake

to do the exercise to make progress to do shopping نتبوق to make money

to do shopping يتسوق to make money to do business to make a speech

Ex. (59) Supply the correct from of "make" or "do" in the following:

- 1. The best cloth is in England.
- 2. Hehis best to help me.
- 3. Have you your homework?
- 4. I have only....my duty.
- 5. If you take this medicine it will you good.
- 6. whatever you like.
- 7. What were you......when I came in?
- 8. Do you your exercise carefully?
- 9. Don't......noise. 10. I have much work to.......

to do away with (=to abolish) to do someone in (=to kill).

to redecorate). وربط to redecorate

to do a room out (=to sweep and clean).

to be done for (= useless or broken) to do without يستغنى عن

to do with (=manage with) to make for (=travel towards).

يصمم على قرار to make up one's mind يتملق to make up one's mind

to make up (=to invent) to use cosmetics تتزين مستحضرات التجميل

to make up for (=compensate) يعوض

to make out (=to discern) 2 يرى بوضوح understand 3) write.

to make off (with) = to go away with.

to make over (= transfer property) ينقل

Ex. (60) Add the correct particle in the following sentences:

- 1. We still need two men to make the team.
- 2. Men don't like girls who make.....too much.
- 3. Please make the bill and I shall pay immediately.
- 4. Ahmed, do your shoes.....before leaving the house.
- 5. I have my room done.....once a weak.
- 6. he made his fortune......to his son before he died.
- 7. It is an old paper but there are many words I can't make......
- 8. She can't do her hot water bottle on these cold nights.
- 9. Make you mind. We can't wait here all day.
- 10. Get out of here or I'll do you!

(2) "Come" & "Bring"

يقدم (= cause to happen) bring in (= to introduce) يقدم

bring off (=to succeed against difficulties).

bring round (=to bring to a place nearby).

bring on (=happen) come in (=enter).

come off (=to take place-succeed).

come by (=obtain by doubtful means).

(discover unexpectedly يكتشف بالصدفة someone who lives nearby.

come round (= 1. revive 2. visit).

come across (= to meet unexpectedly).

Ex. (61) Add the correct particle to the following sentences.

- 1. I think she has brought......her children beautifully.
- 2. I want an explanation how this disaster came.....
- 3. The government has brought.....new measures to combat inflation
- 4. The cold weather has brough my rheumatism......again.
- 5. May I ask how you come.....my pencil?
- 6. It took him a long time to come......after the operation.
- 7. A new series of regulations camelast week.
- 8. The archaeologists علماء الآثار came.....a tomb of the sixth century A.D.
- 9. Can you imagine who I came while I was in Paris ?
- 10. Bring your friendto see me whenever you like.

(3) "Keep" & "Let".

to keep up with (=to remain abreast of) يتمشى مع

to keep in with(to remain on friendly terms with) يكون على وفاق مع to keep on (=continue) to keep off (=don't walk on). to keep away from (=not come) to keep out (=don't come in). to keep it up (=continue to make effort). to keep in (=remain after school). to let up = (=relax) يسترخى to let in (=to allow to enter). to let out (=to allow to leave to let on)=reveal a secret). to let off (=cause to explode-to excuse). to let oneself in for (=to commit on self to) يشترك في - يورط في to let someone down (=to fail to keep an agreement) بتغلی عن Ex.(62)Add the correct particle in the following sentences 1. We carry an umbrella to keep the rain...... 2. Let us shut the window. It will keep the cold...... 3. Don't let the dogs....., they will make the carpet dirty. 4. I wish you wouldn't keep......talking. It disturbs me. 5. It is most important to keep......with your neighbours. 6. Keep.....the grass. 7. I advise you to keep......from that man, he's a pickpocket. 8. The police blocked the road and let nobody...... 9. Please let me I promise not to do it again. 10. I asked the driver to let me.....at Emad Edin Street. (4) "Get". to get at (=reach) to get out (= leave work). to get off (=remove escape punishment-descend from). to get on with (=continue) to get on (=make progress, mount). to get on with someone(to be on friendly terms with someone) to get down (=descend ينزل dismount -ينرجل). بشفی (to get over (=to recover from illness) to surmount يتغلب على a difficulty - finish. to get through exam (= to succeed to pass). to get through food (= succeed to eat) get into (= enter). Ex. (63) Add the correct particle in the following sentences 1. Get from that wall, you might hurt yourself. 2. She got her car to drive away. 3. I can't find out where the water is getting......the roof. 4. He will never get.....the death of his wife. 5. It is a good idea to getwith your neighbours. 6. Be quite. I want to get.....with my work. 7. He helped her getfrom the horse. 8. The convict السجين got.....in a stolen suit.

g. I hope you are getting with the job. 10. The fat man could get a huge amount of rice. 11. He could gethis exams and got a diploma. 12. You are tall. Can you get......that lamp on the wall. (6) "To Be". to be away يَذِهب بعيدا to be back (=to have returned) to be at something (= engaged in doing) to be in (indoors) to be around to be about (to be somewhere in the immediate neighborhood). to be along (= to arrive when expected). to be out (=not to be considered 2. not at home). to be out for (= trying hard to win or get). to be up finished (used in time only) not in bed. 3. happening. to be on (=to take place (used of performance of all sorts). متأخر (finished) to be behind with (to be in arrears with) متأخر to be through with (= to have finished with). to be off (= 1. to leave, to start on a journey). cancelled - not to take place. to be down (=written down). to be up to engaged in some activity usually illegal- 2. capable of Ex. (64) Add the correct particle in the following sentences 1.Our time is at six o'clock. 2. What were you all.....when we arrived. 3. The film we want to see isn't.....tonight. 4. She was glad when her children were...... 5. Ring again later. Please: Nagi's notyet. 6. The cost of living isagain. 7.I'm sorry, the party'sbecause of the weather. 8. Father is He will return at 10 o'clock. 9.Mr. Salah isn'ton Friday. 10. You can have this book I'm.....it. (7) "Break" "Call" "Carry" "Cut". break down (1. = weep) 2. (have mechanical trouble عطل فني). break up (=destroy-finish school) break off (=stop suddenly). call up (= telephone) call on (=visit a person). يلغى (=visit a place) call on (=cancel) يلغى carry on (=continue) carry out (=execute) نفنيا carry off(achieve triumphantly) يحقق بإنتصار carry off(achieve triumphantly) يزيل - يتخلص من (=eliminate) دريل - يتخلص من (=eliminate)

Ex. (65) Supply the correct particle in the following:

- 1. He has had to cutsmoking since his illness.
- 2. His car broke.....when he was half way home.
- 3. Call mewhen you are ready to leave.
- 4. You must carry.....the instructions to the letter.
- 5. Carry reading where you left off last time.
- 6. We shall have to call the party......if it rains.
- 7. He called my house on his way past.
- 8. We shall have to cut our expenses this year.
- 9. He broke.....in the middle of a sentence when she came in.
- 10. She broke......when she heard the news.

(8) "Draw" "Drop" "Fall" "Go".

draw on (=approach) يقترب

draw up (= 1. prepare a document) 2. (Stop a vehicle عربة).

draw back (= retreat يتراجع draw off (=go away).

ينسحب (drop out (=withdraw) يرسم - يخطط

drop off (= diminish) (يقلل. يخفض) fall off (=diminish)

fall out (=quarrel) fall through (= not to succeed).

fail to (= begin to do something) fall upon (=attack).

fall in with (= meet by chance = agree).

go in for (= take up a hobby or career).

ينطفئ (explode) go out (= become extinguished) ينطفئ

Ex. (66) Add the correct particle in the following sentences

- 1. All our carefully laid plans have fallen......
- 2. The wind fell as night drew......
- 3. Unfortunately the champion had to drop.....the race at the beginning.
- 4. Attendance at class has fallen......badly this term.
- 5. The policeman signed to the driver to draw.....at the side of the road.
- 6. I have asked my lawyer to draw.....a contract between us.
- 7. I will gladly fall......with any plans you may make.
- 8. Luckily the bomb that fell near our house never went......
- 9. Don't let fire gowhile I'm away.
- 10. We fell.....with a group of gypsies on the way.

المطر look after (= take care of العتنى look at (= to regard) المطر look back on (= consider the past) Look on / upon (=consider). look for (=search-seek) Look out (= be watchful, beware). look forward to(= expect with pleasure يتطلع المحافظ look by (يمر على). look in (=pay a short visit) look on (=to regard) يتطلع على look up (= improve) look into (= investigate) يبحث في look over (=inspect, read again, revise quickly) يفتش – يراجع look through (=examine) look down on (=despise) يفتش عن معنى look up (=look for it in the appropriate book)

Ex.(67)Add the correct particle in the following sentences

- 1. If you look.....it carefully you'll see the mark.
- 2. I've been looking......a cup to match the one I broke.
- 3. I look her as one of the family.
- 4. My windows look......the garden.
- 5. You can always look her address in the directory الدليل
- 6. I am looking to seeing your house.
- 7. I'm going to look......Mrs. Wagdy on my way to the store.
- 8. The police is lookingthe numerous fires that happened recently.
- 9. I look......Mr. Wagdy as my adviser.
- 10. "Look......!" he exclaimed.

10. "Give" "Run" "Set".

give something away (= give it to someone).

give someone away (= betray him) يخون

يسترد-يستعيد (erestore) يسترد

give away (=make a present of something) بعطى - يهب

give in (= yield) يستسلم give out (=fail).

give up (=1. surrender. 2. stop 3. renounce).

run out of (=have no more) set about (= begin to).

run over (=drive over accidentally) set to (= begin).

run after(pursue يطار د)run down(=be exhausted 2speak ill of).

run in (to drive slowly) يلين to be run down (to be in poor health).

meet by chance) set on (=attack) set out (=expose to view).

run into (=collide with بصطدم بـ set down (=write).

run out of (=have none left) set up(=establish) يقيم

Ex. (68) Add the correct particle in the following sentences

1. They have set.....a branch of their business in our town. 2. He has failed so many times and yet he won't give..... عبد ملء Our stocks have run and not been replenished 4. The besiged army المحاصر refused to give...... 5. How long is it since you gave......smoking? 6. My uncle is very run..... 7. They asked him to set his ideas before he left. 8. She gave all her old clothes before leaving the country. 9. I ran an old school friend in the cinema. and ran a wall. انزلقت حانيا 10. My car skidded 11. A hen ran in front of my car and I'm afraid I ran.....it. 12. Your secret is save with me. I won't give you...... (11) "Take" and "Turn". turn down (=refuse an offer). take back (=withdraw) بنسحب take down (=write) take in (= deceive) يخدع take off (=1. remove 2. leave the ground 3. imitate). take to (= begin a habit). take up (=begin a hobby-occupy) take out (=remove). يتولى المسئولية (assume responsibility) يتولى المسئولية turn into (=convert) turn up (=appear unexpectedly). turn in (= go to bed) turn out (=produce = result - eject) يطرد turn on / off (=switch on / off). Ex. (69) Add the correct particle in the following sentence: He was turned of his house for not paying his rent. He has recently taken....going for long walks in the evening. You can't take.....as easily as that with your stories. 4. Kamel has just taken.....the family business from his father. 5.Her brother turned....last night. They thought he was in France. 6. This factory turns......100 new cars a day. 7. That boy is always taking......his teacher's manner. 8. We have to move the wardrobe. It takes....too much space. 9. Little Nagi takes.....his father in appearance. The cake turned.....a great success. (12) "Put" "Pick" "Hold". put back (replace) put in for a job (= apply for it). put down (=write) put off (=postpone) يؤجل put out (=extinguish) يطفئ put on clothes (= dress onself).

pick out (=cloose) hold off (=stay away).
hold up (=stop by threats) تهدیدات hold on (=wait).
to be put out (=be annoyed) hold up (=delay) يعطل put up (=erect) ۲ يقيم raise يرفع prices. hold out (=endure ريتحمل put someone up (=give him hospitality) يتحمل put up with (=bear) يتحمل (tolerate يسامح pick up (= raise يرفع , take with, acquire برفع , take with, acquire برفع).

Ex(70)Add the correct particle in the following sentences

- They decided to put the match.....because of the rain.
- 2. She was put when he spoke to her like that.
- 3. Put the stove when you have finished cooking.
- 4. The delegates المندوبين put at the best hotel in town.
- 5. I'll put my visit to Germany.
- 6. That vase is valuable. Put it......before you drop it.
- 7. Put.....his phone number before you forget it.
- 8. I know that you are in this photograph but I can't pick you...
- 9. The thief held......the cashier and robbed the bank.
- 10. The rain heldtill after the tennis party.

Verb + Preposition + ing

a) Many verbs have the structure verb (V) + preposition(P) + object. For example, talk about :

- We talked about the problem. (the problem is the object).

If the object is another verb, it ends in - ing:

- We talked about going to America. (V + P + -ing). Here are some more verbs which have the structure V+P+ing

	Total Y	lin	finding a job yet?
succeed in	Has Tom succeeded I	in	
	don't feel	like	going out tonight.
fell like	Are you thinking	of/about	buying a house ?
think about/of	I've always dreamed	of	being rich.
dream of approve/disapprove of	She doesn't approve	of	gambling.
look forward to	I'm looking forward	to	meeting her.
	He insisted	on	buying me a drink
insist on	We decided	against	moving to London
decide against	He apologized.	for	keeping me waiting
apologize for	The second secon	And the second s	and to do

^{*} I feel like doing = I'd like to do, I'm in the mood to do. We say apologize to someone for something:

-He apologized to me for keeping me waiting (no the apologized me). With some of these verbs you can also use the structure verb + preposition+someone+ing. For example:

- We are all looking forward to Peter coming home.
- She doesn't approve of her son staying out late at night.

- They insisted on me (or my) staying with them.

b) These verbs have the structure verb+object + preposition+ ing:

accuse	They accused	me	of	telling lies.
suspect	Did they suspect	the man	of	being a spy ?
congratulate	I congratulated	Ann	on	passing the exam.
prevent	What prevented	him	from	coming to the wedding?
stop	We stopped	everyone	from	leaving the building.
thank	He thanked	me	for	being so helpful
forgive	Please forgive	me	for	not writing to you.
warn	They warned	us	against	buying the car

After stop you can leave out from. So you can say: We stopped every one leaving (or from leaving) the building.

Some of these verbs are often used in the passive :

I was accused of telling lies.

Was the man suspected of being a spy?

We were warned against buying it.

Ex.70a In this exercise you have to write the correct preposition and to put the verb into the correct from. Use the verb in brackets at the end of each sentence.

Example: Jack insisted on going out by himself. (qo). After a long time we eventually succeededa flat (find).

- 2. I've been thinking for a new job. (look).
- 3. His parents didn't approve......him out so late. (stay)
- 4. I wonder what prevented him to the party. (come) 5. I m getting hungry. I m looking forward.....dinner. (have)
- (study). 6. I don t feel.....today.
- 7. Forgive me you but I must ask you a question. (interrupt).
- 8. The arrested man was suspectedinto a house. (break).
- (get). 9. Have you ever thought married?
- 10. I've always dreamed.... on a small island in the Pacific. (live).
- (have). 11. The cold water didn't. stop her a swim.
- (commit). 12. Have you ever been accused a crime?
- (be). 13. She apologized so rude to me
- (buy). 14. We have decided...... a new car.

Ex 70b Now you have to change direct speech into reported speech. Begin each of your sentenced in the way shown. Example it was nice of you to help me. Thanks very much. (George said to you).

On time/in time
At the end / in the end

a) On time and in time.

On time = punctual; (في الوقت المحدد) not late. If something happens om time, it happens at the time which was planned :

- The 11.45 train left on time. (=it left at 11.45).
- A: I'll meet you at the corner at 7.30.
- B:Okay, but please be **on time**. (=don't be late/be there at 7.30).
- The conference was very well organised. Everything began and finished **on time.**

In time (for something/to do something) = soon enough for something/soon enough to do something:

- -Will you be home in time for dinner? (= soon enough for dinner).
- I've sent Jill her birthday present. I hope it arrives in time (for her birthday).
- I must hurry. I want to get home in time to see the football match on television. (soon enough to see the footable match).

The opposite of in time is too late:

- I got home too late to see the football match.

Note the expression just in time:

- We got to the station just in time to catch the train.
- A dog ran across the road in front of the car, but I managed to stop just in time (to avoid hitting the dog).

b) At the end and in the end.

At the end (of something) = at the time when something ends.

at the end of the month

at the end of January

at the end of the film

at the end of the course

at the end of the match

at the end of the concert

- -I'm going away at the end of January/at the end of the month.
- At the end of the concert, there was tremendous applause.
- All the players shook hands at the end of the match.

You cannot say in the end of something.

The opposite of at the end is at the beginning:

at the beginning of the concert, at the beginning of January.

In the end = finally. We use in the end when we say what the final result of a situation was :

- We had a lot of problems with our car. In the end we sold it and bought another one.
- He got more and more angry. **In the end** he just walked out of the room.
- Tom couldn't decide where to go for his holidays. He decided to go to Italy in the end.

Ex. 71a Complete these sentences with "on time or in time".

Example: The bus was late this morning, which is unusual. It's usually on time.

- 1. George is usually late for work but this morning her arrived....
- 2. I washed your shirt this morning but it should be dry...... for you to wear it this evening.
- 3. We had to get on the train without tickets because we didn't get to the station......to buy them.
- 4. It's a very good train service. The trains always run.....
- 5. Our best player was injured in the last match. We hope he will be fit.....to play in the next game.
- 6. We plan to go to America in two weeks but we're still waiting for our visas. I hope they arrive......

240

Ex. 71b In this exercise you have to make sentences with "Just in time".

Example: A dog ran across the road in front of the car. You saw it at the last moment.

(I/manage/stop/time) I managed to stop just in time.

- 1. Tom was going to sit on the chair you had painted. You said, "Don't sit on that chair" !.so he didn't (I/get/away/time) I
- 2. You were walking home without an umbrella. Just after you got home, it started to rain very heavily. (I/get/home/time).....
- 3. You thought you were going to miss the beginning of the film, but it began just as you sat down in the cinema. (I/get/the cinema/time/beginning/film).....

Ex. 71c Complete these sentences with "at" or "in".

Example: The players shook hands at the end of the match.

- 1. It took John a long time to find a job after he left school...... the end he found a job as a waiter.
- 2. "When do you get paid?" the end of the month."
- 3. Are you going away...the beginning of August or..... the end?
- 4. I couldn't decide what to get Ann for her birthday.....the end I didn't get her anything at all.
- 5. We waited ages for a taxi. We gave up.....the end and walked home.
- 6. the end of the course the students usually have a party.
- 7. I'll be moving to a new address.....the end of September.
- 8. His illness got worse and worse,the end he had to go into hospital for an operation.
- 9. Tom didn't want to lend us the money at first butthe end he agreed.

Noun + Preposition (Reason "For", cause "Of"

Study this list of nouns + preposition.

a cheque FOR (a sum of money):

- They sent me a cheque for £50.

a demand/a need FOR something:

- The firm closed down because there wasn't enough demand for its product.

a reason FOR something:

- The train was late but no-one knew the reason for the delay.
- a rise / an increase / a fall / a decrease IN something :
- There has been an increase in road accidents recently.

an advantage / a disadvantage OF something :

The advantage of living alone is that you can do what you like, but we say "there is an advantage in doing something":

- There are many advantages in living alone.
- a cause OF someone / something:
- Nobody knows what the cause of the explosion was.
- a photograph / a picture OF someone / something:
- The accident was my fault, so I paid for the damage to the other car. a reaction TO رد فعل something :
- I was surprised at his reaction to What I said.
- a solution حـل TO a problem / an answer TO a question / a reply TO a letter / a key TO a door:
- Do you think we'll find a solution to this problem?
- The answer to your question is "NO"! an attitude موقف to/towards someone/something :
- His attitude to/towards his job is very negative.
 a relationship / a connection / contact WITH someone / something:
- Do you have a good relationship with your parents?
- Police want to question a man in connection with the robbery.

but : a relationship / a connection / a difference between two things :

- Police have said that there is no connection between the two murders.
- There are some differences between British English and American English.

Ex. 72a :In this exercise you have to read a sentence and then complete another sentence with the same meaning :

Example: What caused the explosion? What was the cause of the explosion?

- 1. We're trying to solve the problem. We're trying to find a solution.....
- 2. Ann gets on well with her brother. Ann has a good relationship
- 3. Prices have increased a lot. There has been a big increase.....
- 4. I don't know how to answer your question. I can't think of an answer.....

5. Nobody wants to buy snoes like these any more.
There is no demand
6. I think that being married has some advantages. I think that there are some advantages
7. The number of people without jobs has fallen this year.
There has been a fall
8. I don't think that a new road is necessary.
I don't think that there is any need
Ex. 72b Complete these sentences with the correct
preposition.
Example: There are some differences between British
English and American English.
1. I've just received an invitation a wedding next week.
2. The causethe fire in the hotel last night is still unknown.
3. Ann showed me a photographthe hotel where she
stayed during her holiday.
4. Money isn't the solutionevery problem.
5. The company has rejected the workers demandsan in creasepay.
6. The two companies are completely independent. There is no connectionthem.
7. When I opened the envelope, I was delighted to find a cheque
500.
8. Have you seen this picture the town as it looked 100 years ago?
9. Sorry I haven't written to you for so long. The reason
this is that I've been ill recently.
10. The advantagehaving a car is that you don't have to rely on public transport.
11. There are many advantagesbeing able to speak a foreign
language.
12. There has been a sharp risethe cost of living in the
past few years.
13. The front door is locked. Have you got the key the back door?
14. Bill and I used to be good friends but I don't have much
contacthim now. 15. I've never met Carol but I've seen a photographher.
[THE PERSON OF A PROPERTY

Verb + Preposition

Study this list of verbs + preposition : apologize بعنذر (To someone) FOR something :

- When I realized I was wrong, I apologized to him for my mistake.

a job/a place at university etc. :

- I think this job would suit you. Why don't you apply for it ?

 believe IN يؤمن بـ something:
- You believe in God (= You believe that God exists).
- I believe in saying what I think. (= I believe that it is a good thing to say what I think).

: someone ينتمي إلى Belong TO

- Who does this coat belong to?

care ABOUT بهتم someone/something (= think someone/something is important) :

He is very selfish. He doesn't care about other people.

Care FOR someone/something: i) = like something (usually in questions and negative sentences):

- Would you care for a cup of coffee? (= Would you like?)
- I don't care for hot weather. (= I don't like....)

ii) = Look after someone:

- She is very old. She needs someone to care for her.

take care OF someone / something (= look after):

- Have a nice holiday. Take care of yourself!

: someone / something بصطدم بــ someone /

- There was an accident this morning. A bus collided with a car.

complain بشكو (TO someone) ABOUT someone / something:

 We complained to the manager of the restaurant about the food.

: something يركز على something

- Don't look out of the window. Concentrate on your work! consist OF something:
- We had an enormous meal. It consisted of seven courses. crash / drive / bump / run INTO someone / something:
- He lost control of the car and crashed into a wall.

depend ON Someone / something:

- -What time will you arive?I don't know. It depends on the traffic. You can leave out on before question words(when/where/how etc.
- Are you going to buy it? It depends (on) how much it is.

die OF an illness:

- What did he die of? A heart attack.

dream ABOUT someone / something:

- I dreamt about you last night.

dream OF being something / doing something(=imagine):

- I often dream of being rich.
 also: (I) wouldn't dream (of doing something):
- Don't tell anyone what I said. No, I wouldn't dream of it.

happen TO someone / something:

- A strange thing happened to me the other day.
- What happened to that gold watch you used to have ?

hear ABOUT something (= be told about something):

- Did you hear about the fight in the club on Saturday night?
- Have you heard about Janet? She's getting married.

hear OF someone / something (= know that someone / something exists):

- Who is Tom Madely ? I have no idea. I've never heard of him.
- Have you heard of a company called Smith Electrics"?
 hear FROM someone (= receive a letter / telephone call from someone):
- Have you heard from Ann recently ? Yes, she wrote to me last week.

laugh / smile AT someone / something :

- I look stupid with this haircut. Everyone will laugh at me.

listen TO someone / something:

- We spent the evening listening to records.

live ON money / food:

- George's salary is very low. It isn't enough to live on.

look AT someone / something (= look in the direction of):

- Why are you looking at me like that?

also: have a look AT, stare AT, glance AT

look FOR someone / something (= try to find):

- I've lost my keys. Can you help me look for them?
 look AFTER someone / something (= take care of):
- She's very old. She needs someone to look after her.
- You can borrow this book if you promise to **look after** it. pay (someone) FOR something:
- I didn't have enough money to pay for the meal.
 but: pay a bill/a fine/a fare/taxes etc.(no preposition).
 rely ON someone / something:
- You can rely on Jack. He always keeps his promises.
 search (a person / a place / a bag etc.) FOR someone / something.
- I've searched the whole house for my keys but I still can't find them.
- The police are searching for the escaped prisoner.

Shout AT someone (when you are angry):

- He was very angry and started **shouting** at me.
- but: Shout TO someone (so that they can hear you):
- He shouted to me from the other side of the street. speak/talk TO someone (with is also possible but less usual):
- (on the telephone) Hello, can I speak to Jane, please?
- Who was that man I saw you talking to in the pub? suffer FROM an illness:
- The number of people **suffering from** heart disease has increased.

think ABOUT someone/something(= consider, concentrate the mind on):

- You're quiet this morning. What are you thinking about?
- I've thought about what you said and I've decided to take your advice.
- Will you lend me the money ? I'll think about it. think OF someone/something (= remember, bring to mind, have an idea):

- He told me his name but I can't **think of** it now. (not think about it).
- That's a good idea. Why didn't I think of that?

We also use think OF when we ask for or give an opinion :

- What did you think of the film? I didn't think much of it. wait FOR someone/something:
- I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting for the rain to stop.

write TO someone:

- Sorry I haven't written to you for such a long time.

We do not use a preposition with these verbs:

phone someone Did you phone your father yesterday?

discuss something We discussed many things at the meeting
enter(go into a place) She felt nervous as she entered the room.

Ex.73a: Complete these sentences with a preposition (if a preposition is necessary).

Example: There was an accident this morning. A bus collided with a car.

- 1. He loves complaining. He complains.....everything.
- 2. Our neighbours complained ...us...the noise we made last night.
- 3. She hasn't got a job. She depends.....her parents for money.
- 4. You were very rude to Tom. Don't think you should apologizehim?
- 5. Are you going to apologize what you did?
- 6. Tom and I ran each other in town yesterday afternoon.
- 7.He decided to give up sport in order to concentrate...his studies.
- 8. I don't believe.....working hard. It's not worth it.
- 9. A football team consists......11 players.
- 10.It is terrible that some people are dying....hunger while others eat too much.
- 11. As I was going out of the room, I collided......someone who was coming in.
- 12. There was an awful noise as the car crashed.....the tree.
- 13. Do you belong.....a political party?
- 14. I don't know whether I'll go out tonight. It depends how I feel.

Ex. 73b: Complete these sentences with a preposition (if a preposition is necessary).

Example: She smiled at me as she passed me in the street.

street.
1. Don't listenwhat he says. He's stupid.
2. What happenedthe picture that used to be on that wall
3. A: You wouldn't go away without telling me, would you?
B: Of course not. I wouldn't dreamit.
4. I dreamt Ann last night. We were dancing together a
a party when she suddenly hit me. Then I woke up.
5. The accident was my fault, so I had to paythe damage
6. I didn't have enough money to paythe bill.
7. You know that you can always relyme if you need any help
8. The man sitting opposite me on the train kept staring me
9. She doesn't eat very much. She livesbread and eggs.
In these sentences put in the correct preposition after
hear.
10. Did you hearthe accident last night? Yes, Ann told m
11. Jill used to write to me quite often but I haven't heard
her for a long time now.
12. A: Have you read any books by James Hudson?
B: James Hudson? No, I've never heardhim.
13. Thank you for your letter. It was nice to hearyou again
14. Do you want to hearour holiday? No, tell me later.
15. The town I come from is very small. You've probably never
heardit. In these sentences put in the correct preposition after
look.
16. When I looked my watch, I couldn't believe that it
was so late.
17. Who lookedvou when you were ill?
18. The police are still lookingthe seven-year-old boy who
disappeared from his home last week. Nobody knows where
the boy is.

19. When we went out for the evening, a neighbour of ours looked the children. 21. I'm looking......Tom. Have you seen him anywhere? Ex. 73c Complete these sentences with a preposition where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the sentence as it is. Example: He was angry and started shouting at me. 1. I've searched everywhere......John but I haven't been able to find him. 2. Ken gets very jealous. He doesn't like his girlfriend talking other men. 3. I don't want to go out yet. I'm waiting the post to arrive. 4. Please don't shout me! Be nice to me. 5. We passed Tom as we were driving along. I shouted him but he didn't hear. 6. Ann doesn't write her parents very often but she phones them at least once a week. 7. Can I speak.....you for a moment? There's something I want to ask you. 8. Sally is often not well. She sufferssevere headaches. 9. The police have been searching the countryside..... the missing girl. 10. She's a bit lonely. She needs someone to talk..... 11. I don't want to discuss what happened last night. I want to forget about it. 12. We're going out for a meal tonight. I must phone..... the restaurant to reserve a table. In these sentences you have to use the correct preposition (of or about) after think. Remember that sometimes you can use either of or about. 13. Before you make a final decision, think carefully...what I said. 14. I don't know what to get Ann for her birthday. Can you think anything? 15. You're selfish. You only thinkyourself.

- 16. I've finished the book you lent me. "Oh, have you? What did you think it?
- 17. We're thinking going out for a meal tonight. Would you like to come ?
- 18. I don't really want to go out to dinner with Tom tonight. I'll have to think an excuse.
- 19. When he asked her to marry him, she said that she wanted to go away and think...... if for a while.
- 20. She is rather homesick. She's always thinking.....her family back home.
- 21. I don't think much.....this coffee. It's like water.

Verb + Object + Preposition

Study this list of verbs + object + preposition : accuse یته someone OF (doing) something :

- Tom accused Ann of being selfish.
- Three students were accused of cheating in the examination.

Ask (Someone) FOR something:

- I wrote to the company asking them **for more** information about the job.

but: ask (someone) a question (no preposition). blame يلوم someone/something FOR something:

- Everybody blamed me for the accident.

or: blame something ON someone/ something:

- Everybody blamed the accident on me.

We also say: (someone is) to blame for something:

- Everybody said that I was to blame for the accident.

Borrow something FROM someone:

- I didn't have any money. I had to **borrow** some **from** a friend of mine.

charge بتهم someone WITH (an offence/a crime) :

- Three men have been arrested and charged with robbery.
- : someone ON (doing) something يهنئ congratulate
- When I heard that he had passed his examination, I phoned him to congratulate him on his success.

divide / cut / split something INTO (two or more parts):

- The book is divided into three parts.
- Cut the meat into small pieces before frying it.
 do something ABOUT something (= do something to improve a bad situation):
- The economic situation is getting worse and worse. The government ought to do something about it.

explain (a problem / a situation / a word etc.) TO someone:

- Can you explain this word to me?(not explain me this word).
 also: (explain / to someone) that/what/how/why......
 (note the word order):
- Let me explain to you what I mean.
 invite someone TO (a party / a wedding etc.):
- Have you been invited to any parties recently?
 leave (a place) FOR (another place):
- I haven't seen her since she left home for work this morning. point/aim something AT someone / something:
- Don't **point** that knife **at** me! It's dangerous. **prefer someone / something TO someone / something :**
- I prefer tea to coffee.

 protect يحسى someone/something FROM (or against)

 someone / something:
- He put sun-tan oil on his body to protect his skin from the sun. (or.....against the sun.).

پزود someone WITH something :

- The school provides all its students with books. regard someone/something AS something:
- I've always regarded you as one of my best friends. remind someone/something of (cause someone to remember)
- This house reminds me of the one I lived in when I was a child.
- Look at this photograph of Tom. Who does he remind you of?
 but: remind someone ABOUT something (=tell someone not to forget):

 I'm glad you reminded me about the party. I had completely forgotten it.

For remind someone to do something : sentence يحكم على someone TO (a period of imprisonment)

- He was found guilty and sentenced to six months imprisonment,
 spend (money) ON something:
- How much money do you spend on food each week?
 Note that we usually say spend (time) doing something:
- I spend a lot of time reading.
 throw something AT someone/something (in order to hit them):
- Someone threw an egg at the minister while he was speaking.
 but: throw something TO someone (for someone to catch):
- Ann shouted Catch"! and threw the keys to me from the window. translate (a book etc.) FROM one language INTO another language:
- George Oswell's books have been translated into many languages.

warn بحــــــــــــــــر someone ABOUT someone / something. (of is also possible sometimes):

- I knew she was a bit strange before I met her. Tom had warned me about her.
- Everybody has been warned about the dangers of smoking.
 For warn someone against doing something.
 For warn someone not to do something.
 Ex. 74a: Complete these sentences with a preposition.
 Example: I didn't have any money, so I had to borrow
- some from a friend of mine.

 1. You're always asking me.....money. Why don't you ask someone else for a change?
- 2. I've been invited......the wedding but unfortunately I can't go.
- 3. When I saw Dave, I congratulated him...passing his driving test.
- 4. Be careful with those scissors. Don't point them.....me!
- 5. It's not very pleasant when you are accusedsomething you didn't do.

 6. The driver of the car was taken to the police station and later chargedtheft 7. Is that your own book? "No, I borrowed itthe library. 8. It't a very large house. It's dividedfour flats. 9. Mr. and Mrs. Roberts are on a tour of Europe at the moment.
They're in Rome now, but tomorrow they leaveVenice.
10. The roof of the house is in very bad condition. I think we
ought to do somethingit
Ex. 74b: In this exercise you have to use the correct
nreposition after "Blame".
Sometimes you have to use "For", and sometimes "On".
Example: Tom said that the accident was my fault.
Tom blamed me for the accident.
Tom blamed the accident on me.
1. Ann said that what happened was Jim's fault. Ann blamed
Jim blame
2. You always say that everything is my fault. You always blame
everything
3. Do you think that the economic situation is the fault of the
government? Do you blame the government
At think that the increase in violent crime is the fault of television.
I blame the increase in violent crime
Now re-write sentences 3 and 4 usingto blame for
Example: Tom said that I was to blame for the accident.
5. (3) Do you think that the government is?
6. (4) I think that
Ex 74c Complete these sentences with the correct
preposition.
Example: Ann shouted "Catch!" and threw the keys to me
from the window. 1. Do you prefer your present jobthe one you had before?
 Do you prefer your present jobthe one you had been at the cold. They wore warm clothes to protect themselvesthe cold.
3. He's written many books but most people regard his first book
his best.

4. Do you spend much moneyclothes?
5. Do you see that girl over there? Does she remind you
anyone you know ?
6. Remind me the meeting tomorrow night. I'm sure
to forget otherwise.
7. I love this music. It always makes me feel very happy. It
reminds me a warm spring day.
8. When we went on our skiing holiday last year, the organisers
provided usall the equipment we needed.
9. Before he came to Britain, many people had warned him
the weather. So he was prepared for plenty of rain.
10. He was sentencedlife imprisonment for the murder of
policeman.
11. Don't throw stonesthe birds! It's crue!.
12. If you don't want to eat that sandwich, throw it the
birds. They'll eat it.
13. I couldn't understand the letter because it was in Spanish. So
a friend of mine translated itEnglish for me.
14.I prefer travelling by traindriving. It's much more pleasant.
15. What do you spend most of your money?
16. She got really angry. She even threw a chairme!
17. You remind me very muchsomeone I used to know a
long time ago. You are really like him in many ways.
18. Some words are difficult to translateone language
another.
19. Before you go into the house, I must warn youthe
dog. He can be very aggressive sometimes.
Adjective + Preposition
Study these groups of adjectives + preposition.
nice/kind/good/generous/mean/stupid/silly/intelligent/
clever/sensible/(im) polite/rude/unreasonable OF someone (to do something):
- Thank you. It was very nice/kind of you to help me.
- It's stupid of her to go out without a coat She'll catch cold.

but: (to be) nice/kind/good/generous/mean/(im) polite/ rude/(un)

pleasant /(un) friendly/cruel TO someone:

- She has always been very nice/kind to me. (not with me).
- Why were you so rude / unfriendly to Ann?.
- angry/annoyed/furious about something with someone FOR doing something:
- . What are you so angry / annoyed about?
- They were furious with me for not inviting them to the party. delighted سرور / satisfied./ disappointed خانب الرحاء WITH something:
- I was delighted / pleased with the present you gave me.
- Were you disappointed with your examination results ? bored متضايق / fed up WITH something :
- You get bored / fed up with doing the same thing every day.
 surprised / shocked / amazed / astonished AT / BY
 something:
- Everybody was surprised / shocked at / by the news.
 excited / worried / upset ABOUT something:
- Are you excited about going on holiday next week?
- Ann is upset about not being invited to the party.
 afraid / frightened / terrified / scared OF someone / something:
- Are you afraid of dogs? Yes, I'm terrified of them. proud / ashamed OF someone / something:
- I'm not ashamed of what I did. In fact I'm quite proud of it. jealous غيور / suspicious OF مرتاب someone/something:

Why are you always so jealous of other people?

- He didn't trust me. He was suspicious of my intentions. aware مدرك / conscious OF something :
- Did you know they were married? "No, I wasn't **aware of** that. good/bad/excellent/brilliant متألق لامع hopeless AT (doing) something:
- I'm not very good at repairing things.

married / engaged خاطب TO someone :

- Linda is married to an American. (not with an American).
 Sorry ABOUT something:
- I'm sorry about the noise last night. We were having a party.
 but: sorry FOR doing something:

1

- I'm sorry for shouting at you yesterday.

But it is more usual to say: I'm sorry I.....:

- I'm sorry I shouted at you yesterday.
- (to feel/to be) sorry FOR someone:
- I feel sorry for George. He has got no friends and no money. impressed متأثر BY / WITH someone/something:
- I wasn't very impressed by / with the film.

Famous FOR something:

- The Italian city of Florence is famous for its art treasures.

: something مسئول عن something

- Who was responsible for all that noise last night?

different FROM (or TO) someone / something:

- The film was quite different from (or to) what I expected.

Interested IN something:

- Are you interested in art and architecture?
- capable فادر على / incapable OF something :
- I'm sure you are capable of passing the examination.

fond OF someone / something:

- Mary is **very fond of animals**. She has three cats and two dogs **Full OF something:**
- The letter I wrote was full of mistakes.

Short OF something:

- I'm a bit short of money. Can you lend me some?

tired OF something:

- Come on, let's go! I'm tired of waiting.

something: شدید الشوق إلى something:

 We stayed at home because Ann wans't very keen on going out in the rain.

: something مشابه لــ something

Your writing is similar to mine.

. The city centre was crowded with tourists.				
EX. 75a: Complete these sentences with the correct preposition.				
Example: I was delighted with the present you sent me.				
 It's very niceyou to let me use your car. Thank you very much. 				
2. Why are you always so rudeyour parents? Can't you be nicethem?				
 It wasn't very polite him to leave without saying thank you. I can't understand people who are cruelanimals. 				
5. Why do you always get so annoyedlittle things?6. The people next door are annoyedusmaking				
so much noise last night. 7. We enjoyed our holiday but we were rather disappointed				
8. I was surprisedthe way he behaved. It was quite out				
of character.				
 She doesn't often go out at night. She's afraidthe dark. I've been trying to learn Spanish but I'm not very satisfied my progress. 				
11. Jill starts her new job on Monday. She's quite excitedit.				
12. I was shockedwhat you said. You should be ashamed yourself.				
13. Did you know that Linda is engageda friend of mine?14. I had never seen so many people before. I was astonished				
15. Bill has been doing the same job for too long. He's bored it. 16. These days everybody is awarethe dangers of smoking. 17. Are you still upsetwhat I said to you yesterday? Ex. 75b: Complete these sentences with the correct				
preposition. Example: Sorry about the noise last night. We were having a party.				

1. I'd rather not go to an Indian restaurant. I'm not very keen
1. I'd rather not go to an and
Indian food.
2. Ann is very fond her younger brother.
 Ann is very folid
neonle
to the support I found a box full
5. He said he was sorry the situation but there was
nothing he could do.
6 Britain certainly isn't famousIts food.
7. That man's very honest. He isn't capabletelling a lie.
8. The man we interviewed for the job was quite intelligent but
we weren't very impressedhis appearance.
we weren't very impressed
9. Travelling is great at first but you get tiredit after a while.
10. Do you know anyone who might be interestedbuying
an old car?
11. Our house is similartheirs-I think ours is a bit larger.
12. Bill and I come from the same town but my accent is different
his.
13. The police are responsiblemaintaining law and order.
14. We're short our office at the moment. There aren't
enough people to do the work that has to be done.
17. I'm sorrythe smell in this room. It's just been painted.
11 (11 (11 (11 (11 (11 (11 (11 (11 (11
Preposition + noun ("by" mistake, "on" television
Study this list and the examples carefully:
to pay BY cheque (but to pay IN cash or to pay cash).
- Did you pay by cheque or in cash?
(to do something) BY accident / BY mistake / BY chance:
 We hadn't arranged to meet. We met by chance.
a play BY Shakespeare/ a painting BY Rembrant/ a novel
BY Tolstoy etc. :
- Have you read any books by Agatha Christie? (= any books
written by Agatha Christie ?).
(to be / to fall) IN love WITH someone:
- Have you ever been in laws will
- Have you ever been in love with anyone ? IN (my) opinion:
(117) Opinion :

- In my opinion the film wasn't very good. (to be) ON fire:
- Look! That car is on fire.

(to be) ON the telephone / ON the phone:

- You can't phone me. I'm not on the phone. (= I haven't got a phone).
- . I've never met her but I've spoken to her on the phone.

ON television / ON the radio:

- I didn't watch the match on television. I listened to it on the radio.

(to be / to go) ON a diet : رجيم

- I've put on a lot of weight. I'll have to go on a diet.

(to be / to go) ON strike:

- There are no trains today. The railway workers are on strike.
- (to be/to go) ON holiday/ ON business / ON a trip / ON a tour / On an excursion نزمة / ON an expedition بثنة etc.
- Tom's away at the moment. He is on holiday in France.
- Did you go to Paris on Business or on holiday?
- One day I'd like to go on a world tour.

but you can also say go to a place FOR a holiday/FOR my holiday(s)':

- Tom has gone to France for a holiday.
- Where are you going for your holidays this year ?

(to go/to come) FOR a walk/FOR a swim/FOR a drink etc.

- She always goes for a walk with her dog in the morning.
- After work we went to a cafe for a drink.

(to have something) FOR breakfast/FOR lunch/FOR dinner

- What did you have for lunch?

Ex.76a: Complete the sentences with the correct preposition. Example: We hadn't arranged to meet. We met by chance.

- 1. I'm hungry. What'sdinner this evening?
- 2. my opinion, violent films shouldn't be shown.... television.
- 3. I think I need a bit of exercise. Shall we go.....a walk?
- 4. I mustn't eat too much. I'm supposed to bea diet.
- 5. There was panic when people realised the building was fire.

- 6. The weather was terrible when we were.....holiday in Scotland.
- 7. Where did you goyour holidays last year ?
- 8. I won't be at work next week. I'll beholiday.
- 9. I wouldn't like to go a cruise. I think I'd get bored.
- 10. The shop assistant wouldn't accept my cheque and insisted that I paid......cash.
- 11. Did you hear the news this morning.....the radio?
- 12. It was onlyaccident that I found out who the man really was.
- 13. When we went to Rome, we wenta tour around the city.
- 15. When I was 14, I went.....a trip of France organised by my school.

Ex. (77) General Objective Tests On Prepositions:

- 1. We spend the mid-year holiday (in at on by) Luxor.
- 2. We spend the summer holiday (in at on of) Alexandria.
- 3. My uncle will arrive (in at one into) the afternoon.
- 4. He takes a walk (in at on by) Sundays.
- 5. I bought a book (at for with by) ten shillings.
- 6.He was standing just (beside-outside-inside besides) you.
- I have other books (beside outside inside besides)
 these.
- 8. He has lived here (for of since from) two years.
- 9. He has been ill (for since ago from) last Friday.
- 10. I will come back (in after for within) an hour.
- 11. The work was shared (between-within-with among) all.
- The officer walked (between within with among) two lines of soldiers.
- 13. He accused the man (for with to of) stealing.
- 14. I am accustomed (for with to of) the hot weather.
- 15. The girls is afraid (for to with of) the dog.
- 16. He aimed (on towards to at) the bird.
- 17. The teacher was angry (with at on of) Ali.
- 18. Parents were anxious (about-for-on at) the child's health.

- 19. He was ashamed (for at on of) his behaviour.
- 20. H is very careful (for with at of) his health.
- 21. Many people complain (for on at of) the heat.
- 22. Our class is composed (for at on of) thirty boys.
- 23. I have great confidence (on of at in) him.
- 24. The mountain is covered (by at with of) snow.
- 25. The man was cured (by at from of) his illness.
- 26. He was deprived (from of at off) his freedom.
- 27. I congratulated him (from at on for) his success.
- 28. I was disappointed (in with at of) his work.
- 29. I divided the apple (in between into at) parts.
- 30. I have no doubt (in for of about) his success.
- 31. The lady was dressed (at on in about) black.
- 32. This is an exception (for into to at) the rule.
- 33. He failed (at on in of) chemistry last year.
- 34. The bottle is full (at in on of) water.
- 35. I shall be glad to get rid (at in on of) smoking.
- 36. You must guard (about for of against) bad habits.
- 37. A child is dependent (at on out -of) his parents.
- 38. They are different (from of for at) politics.
- 39. My brother always insists (at on in of) his views.
- 40. My friend is interested (in on at into) physics.
- 41. She was very jealous (at on in of) her sister.
- 42. He left (for into to at) England yesterday.
- 43. He lives (by with at on) his salary.
- 44. She started (on at with against) him angrily.
- 45. Mother looks (on at in after) her children.
- 46. They looked (for about after of) the lost child.
- 47. She was married (for with to at) a rich man.
- 48. Their house is opposite. (for on of to) ours.
- 49. I passed (by with to at) the post office.
- 50. The teacher is pleased (from- to of with) the clever boy.
- 51. I prefer tea (for from with to) coffee.
- 52. I am proud (for of on from) my country.
- 53. He was related (with at against to) a rich family.

- 54. He made (on at of up) his mind to leave.
- 55. He was dissatisfied (at in on with) his income.
- 56. Your book is not similar (at to with for) mine.
- 57. I spend a lot of time (for at in on) my readings.
- 58. I hope he will succeed (in for on at) his work.
- 59. A conceited man feels superior (at against on to) everyone else.
- 60. I am quite sure (at for on of) his honesty.
- 61. We were surprised (at for on about) his sudden death.
- 62. The plane took (up of out off) smoothly.
- 63. The accident tied the traffic (over-into-up-on) for an hour.
- 64. I am tired (at from on of) the cold weather.
- 65. I was trembling (with at for from) cold yesterday.
- 66. I have written the letter (with of by in) ink.
- 67. I have applied (for to of at) a job with that company.
- 68. He was ashamed (about for of at) his clothes.
- 69. My friend was not aware (about of for at) his clothes.
- 70. His hard work brought (in about into of) his success.
- 71. You must bring (out up on in) your children carefully.
- 72. We characterize people (by to with at) their appearance.
- 73. I came (by at on across) some old letters.
- 74. His store competes (with on at by) us for customers.
- 75.My friend co-operated (with of at by) me on the project.
- 76. I correspond (with at to by) a friend in London.
- 77. Nagi has a craving (to with of for) sweets.
- 78. Mary excels (at in by on) swimming.
- 79. The teacher exempted Ali (from out of for) the exam.
- 80. The boy was immersed (in on of at) his books.
- 81. I am indebted (for to at into) my friend for his help.
- 82. You should profit (by with at from) your experience.
- 83. Nagi is named (on after at for) his grandfather.
- 84. The pupil was rewarded (at for in on) his cleverness.
- 85. It is not good to stare (on to against at) people.
- 86. I sympathize (at with of for) you about your problem.
- 87. We triumphed (at on in over) the enemy.
- 88. Mr. Nagi is worthy (of for from at) a better job.
- 89. He repented (from on at of) his wrong doing.
- 90. He feels repentance (at on for of) his sin.

وظائف اللغة Language Functions

When we are actually talking, we are more concerned with a particular idea نوصل the need to communicate نهتم example an intention قصد or suggestion اقتراح if we want to communicate efficiently, بكفاءة we need to be aware of the various possible ways which we can choose in order to express نعبر عن the idea in mind. We also need to know which of the various ways is most appropriate to مناسب a particular situation at the time.

There are various ways in which some important communicative purposes can be achieved تحقيقها in simple words. How you can be sure you are saying things the way you want to say them. In each section you will find the model auxiliary الفعل which have the same مصطلحات لغوية or auxiliaries expressions المساعد functions.

Various common Functions:

- 1. Greetings and Leave talking.
- 2. Greetings and other remarks on the phone.
- Greeting and closing remarks in letters.
- 4. Attracting attention and addressing people.
- 5. Offers suggestions and Invitations.
- 6. Permission Prohibition.
- 7. Advice and Warnings.
- 8. Requesting and Persuading.
- Protesting and Complaining.
- 10. Apologizing.
- 11. Refusing, Regretting and declining.
- 12. Accusing denying.
- 13. Commands.
- 14. Certainty uncertainty.

1. Greetings and Leave Taking

Α.	1.	Good	morning [*]	1
			_	

2. Good afternoon

Mr. Morning Mr.

3. Good evening.

When we meet people, we greet them according to the time of day. Three different times of day are known for this purpose.

Morning is used until lunch time.

Afternoon is used from lunch until about 6 o'clock.

Evening is used from about 6 o'clock until bedtime.

Morning Mr. ... is used among workmates or friends زملاء في العمل

B. 1. Hello Bill

2. Hi Mary

These expressions may be used as greetings when we meet friends at any time of the day.

Hello is also the usual expression when we greet an unknown caller on the telephone.

2. A to B Have you met Mr. Smith?

B to A. No, not yet. How do you do? My name is Black Smith. to B How do you do Mr. Black.

How do you do? is the formal greeting used by both speakers كلا المتحدثين when they are introduced يقدما to each other for the first time.

How do you do?

How are you?

مع انها تبدو سؤال فلا يجب الإجابة عليها سؤال حقيقى عن الصحة

study this example:

Smith to Black; Oh, How are you Mr. Black?

Black: Fine, thank you, How are you?

Smith: I'm all right, thank you.

? How are you تقال خصيصا للناس الذين نعرفهم من قبل ولكننا لا نستعملها عندما نتعرف على الناس لأول مرة. كذلك فإن ? How are you عادة ما تعبر عن تحيـة ويكررها المتحدث الثانى دون الإجابة عليها.

How are things?

يمكن استعمالها بين الأصدقاء المقربين.

Example:

How are things? The answer is: Fine, thanks or All right Another example:

Hello, I'm Sally. Hi, Sally Nice to meet you. I'm Janet.
Especially when the young generation meet introduction التعارف is
التعارف less formal

How do you do ? تحل محل Nice to meet you الذلك فإن د. I must leave now. Good bye everybody. Good night uncle Samy.

Good bye is an expression عبارة which anyone can use when taking their leave عند المغادرة at any time except late at night.

Good night is used late at night.It is commonly used شائعة among members of a family when they go to bed.

D. People who know each other well and especially young people and children use a number of expressions when they are leaving "Bye" (is the shortened form اختصار) of Goodbye. also Bye, Bye, Cheerio, See you soon.

2. Greetings and other polite remarks on the phone

study the example:

caller, National Automobile club. Centeral office good morning.

Could you put me through to Mr.

or May / could I speak to Mr.

or I'd like to speak to Mr.

Yes, certainly Hold the line please.

or Would you mind holding on a moment?

Thank you for calling.

Not at all. It was nice talking to you goodbye.

3. Greetings and closing remarks in letter.

التحيات و الختام في الخطاب

The usual form of greeting in personal letters and friends is Dear

+ First name example. Dear Ali. Dear Ahmed.

Dear uncle Samy, Dear aunt Samia. للأشخاص ذات الصفة الرسمية

Dear Sir, Dear Madam;

كتام الخطاب الذي يبدأ ب

Very sincerely yours or Yours sincerely بستعمل

ختام الخطاب الذي يبدأ بــ Dear Mr. Ali

Very truly yours or Yours faithfully. يستعمل للأشخاص الذين نعرفهم جيدا Lots of love or Yours ever

4. Attracting attention and Addressing people.

جذب إنتباه الناس ومخاطبتهم

A. Excuse me, Could you explain this point again. It is a polite way of attracting someone's attention, and making sure

والتأكيد, they are listening to you before you say what you really want to say. If you know the person's name, It is polite to add نضيف it as "Exuse me Mr. Salah".

B. Excuse me, Sir do you know it is a no parking area?

It is used when a policeman attracts the attention of any motorist. To answer the policeman's remark we say.

Yes Officer I'm not parking I've run out of petrol

- a) Excuse me, could I have the bill :عند مخاطبة الجرسون والمضيفة نقول:
- b) Excuse me, could I know exactly when we arrive?

Pardon me

تستعمل كطريقة رسمية لجذب الإنتباه

Pardon me madam I think you are standing on my foot.

5. Offers, Suggestions and Invitations

Examples:

العروض - الإقتراحات - الدعاوى

- a. Won't you come and sit down?
- b. Wouldn't you like to have a cup of tea?
- c. Shall I get you some biscuits?
- d. Will you have dinner with me?
- e. Can I do anything to help you?
- f. Could you come to supper on Thursday?

يلاحظ من الأمثلة السابقة إستعمال

shall - will - won't and wouldn't and also can/could to make offers, suggestions and invitations.

Can or could

يستعملا للسؤال عن إقتراح مثال ذلك:

- 1. Where can we get a decent meal in this town?
- 2. Where could one spend an hour or two.

Study the following examples:

What about having a drink?

Let's have a drink. Let me carry your bag for you (allow).

Why don't we take a taxi? I'll do it for you, shall I?

2. Some more examples:

Would you like to come to my party?

I'd love to. Thank you

للإجابة بالإثبات

I'd love, but I'm afraid I can't

للإجابة بالنفي

Dentist; I shall need to see you once more to polish teeth.

Would you like to come back in a week's time?

Perhaps you'd like a drink with us?

Oh, thank you. It is very kind of you.

Take a seat please.

You can sit here if you like.

Have a look at the paper, will you?

6. Permission		الإذن	الحظر Prohibition
	Can / could /	may	يمكن إستعمال

Examples:

Can
May
Could
I have a look at your map

Yes, Of course you can / may.

Can

أكثر تأدبا من

could / may.

Can / May

يمكن إعطاء الأذن بإستعمال

Examples:

You

Can may

Take my guide book

Other expressions:

Would you mind

Do you mind

If I opened my opening if I read

the window?

Your letter

Are we allowed to use our dictionaries?

Would it be all right if I came late?

Is it all right/Ok if I do it tomorrow?

B. Prohibition: الحظر

an prohibition is made برفض الطلب

We use can't / may not / mustn't

These may be softened تخفف by using. I'm sorry or I'm afraid.

Examples:

You

| Can't | smoke here. | mustn't | Park here (I'm afraid)

Other expressions:

You aren't allowed to park here.

It is

not permitted \
forbidden

to park here

You are not to talk during the test.

7. Advice and Warnings النصيحة والتحذيرات

Advice

We can use **shall/should/can/could** to ask for advice **To give advice we can use should and ought to.**But **"ought to"** is very strong form of recommendation.

Study the examples:

1. What

 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathsf{shall} \\ \mathsf{should} \end{array} \right\}$

I do?

- 2. How can I mend the vase?
- 3. What should you do if you were in my position?

You

 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{should} \\ \text{ought to} \end{array} \right\}$

talk to your teachers.

Other expressions for giving advice:

- 1. You had better go and see your teacher about it.
- 2. If I were you, I'd ask my teacher about it.
- 3. I'd advise to go and talk to him.
- 4. You'd better not sit close to the fire.
- **B.** Warnings

التحذيرات

We often follow warnings by saying something unpleasant will happen if they are not needed.

Study the examples.

- 1. If you don't stop making that noise, I'll call the police.
- 2. Stop that noise or I'll call the police.
- 3. You had better hold on tight. You are going to fall.
 - 8. Requesting and Persuading :الطنب والإقناع
- 1. Requests:
- A. We can use can/could will and would to make requests.
- 1. Can/could You help me please?
- 2. Would you pass me the salt?

- 3. Will you post this letter for me? Other expressions for requests:
- 1. Would you be kind and shut the window?
- 2. Would you mind shutting the window?
- B. We can also use. "**Just a second**" to make the interruption التعطيات or delay التعطيات in answering a request, seem as short as possible.

Example:

- 1. Excuse me, may I interrupt you? Just a second
- 2. Could you hold this for me? Certainly, just a second.
- 3. Sometimes we preface تقدم a specific request طلب محــدد with a general request for help by asking for a favour معروف.

Example:

I wonder if you would \ do me a small favour Could you

Yes, what is it? or yes, I'll try.

It depends on what it is.

2. Persuading

الإقتاع (بعمل شي ما)

A. Negative questions أسئلة منفية can be used as a very strong attempt to persuade someone to do something.

Examples:

- 1. Won't you take a holiday this year?
- Couldn't you stay until to morrow ?
- 3. Wouldn't you like to meet your close friend Ahmed ?
- B. (Must Do)

أحيانا تستخدم صفة الأمر بإستعمال

- Do take another piece of cake, there is still plenty there.
- You must try the soup, it is delicious.

9. Protesting And Complaining: المعارضة والشكوى:

Protests and complaints are usually made in an indirect and by using questions الأفعال المساعدة way using auxiliaries rather than by making statements.

- 1. Must you always play your radio when I'm working?
- 2. Do you have to play it loudly?
- 3. Is it absolutely necessary to have it on now?
- 4. Pop music can be very disturbing, you know?

10. Refusing, Regretting And Declining:

 We may refuse rather than agree to do what someone requests. We may decline نــرفض بــادب without regrets rather than accept an invitation. An excuse اعتزاز is often added. Study the examples:

A. Will you come back again to morrow, please? (Request) I am sorry I won't/can't. I am busy. (Refusal)

B. Dad: John would like to talk to you about our wedding plans. Wedding plans?

I'm not

to talk to him on that subject

or It's no use asking to change my mind

or I'm not going to change my mind.

(Refusal)

or I won't do it.

الاعتذار بأدب مع تقديم الأسف: Declining with regrets and excuses Can you come swimming with me?

Regrets

Declining

Excuses

I'm sorry

I can't

≺ it is not possible

I have got a bad could I have to

I'm afraid

What a pity. \ that won't be possible

visit my uncle?

Unfortunately I am awfully busy just now

11. Apologizing الاعتذار

A. We can express our apology by using complete sentences like

I'm very sorry or I beg your pardon.

In case في حالة of deep apology we can also use.

I'm really terribly sorry.and Do please forgive me.

B. Ouch تعبير عن ألم مفاجئ That 's my foot you stepped on.

I'm very sorry! I didn't notice that you were behind me

"You are sitting on my hat!.

The shortened form "Sorry or Pardon"

Pardon is used as an apologetic request for someone to repeat something you have not heard properly.

Study this example:

Sorry I'm late. I missed the train.

It's all right. We haven't started yet.

Is it the 8.30 train that stops at Banha or the 8.50.

Pardon ? I said, it is the 8,30 هنا نستعمل كطلب تكرار ما قاله المتكلم

pardon me and Excuse me

تستخدما لجذب الانتباه

Excuse me.

ولا تستخدم كأسلوب للاعتذار

C. Words like apologize regret are sometimes used in writing, but are rarely heard in speech. Study this example:

Dear Sir

We must apologize for the delay in sending back your photographs. We regret to say that the negatives were damaged.

12. Accusing And Denying : الاتهام والإنكار

It is usually uncomfortable and embarrassing to accuse تنبخ someone of having done something wrong, even حتى we are sure he has done it. A strong accusation اتهام may bring out an equally strong denial إنكار or angry confession. A gentler accusation will bring out a gentler denial or make confession easier. Even when we are certain who the guilty person is , it may ease تسهل matters to pretend there is some doubt.

Study this example:

Someone has been using my record player. It couldn't have been Nagi, could it ?

(accusation).

No, sorry It wasn't me It must have been somebody else.

(denial)إنكار

13. Commands

- For commands we must use: have (got) to must
 For prohibition للحظر we use mustn't.
 Study the example:
- 1. You must go to bed now.
- 2. You'll have to get up early.
- 3. You musn't forget your ticket (= Don't forget your ticket).

Other expressions:

- 1. He says we are to wait for the manager.
- 2. Do you want us to wait here?

2. For the sake of من أجل politeness or good relations (e.g. with employees or students) it is often preferred to give commands in the form of advice, suggestions and requests.

14. Certainty – Uncertainty التأكيد وعدم التأكيد وعدم التأكيد

They can be arranged as follows:

- 1. must (= greatest certainty).
- might (= greatest uncertainty).

Study the examples:

- 1. That **must be** the right way.
- 2. They must have taken a short cut.
- 3. There has to be another way. (there's got to).
- 4. This can't be the right way.
- 5. Let's ask the bus driver. He will (= must) know.

"must / have got to - can't - couldn't"

They express the highest degree of certainty.

Other expressions

I am sure/ certain this isn't the right way or Surely, this isn't the right way.

There will certainly be another way.

B. Should and ought to = not so certain but probable.

لا تستعملا للتأكيد التام ولكنه محتمل.

Study the examples:

We should /ought to get there in time

أما عن الأحداث في الماضي - نقول

They should/ ought to have arrived there now Other expressions:

We'll probably .
We are likely to
It's likely that we will

get there in time

C. Can and could

للتعبير أو التساؤل عن إمكانية وقوع حدث

Study the Examples:

- 1. This **could** be the road to the station.
- 2. Can this really be the right way?

Other expressions:

- 1. It's possible that this is the way to the station.
- 2. **Possibly**, this is the right way.
- D. May العبر عن درجة في التأكد أقل ولكن محتمل الوقوع study the example:
- 1. They may come on the next train.
- 2. They may have missed the train.

Other expressions:

- 1. It's possible that they will come on the next train.
- 2. Perhaps, they will come on the next train.
- E. Might = just possible but very uncertain.

Study the examples:

- 1. They might come on the next train. (Present)
- They might have missed the road. (Past) or It's possible, (but I don't think it likely).
- 1. A. What would you say when you want to:
- 1. Introduce Ali to Ahmed.
- 2. Greet a person whom you see for the first time.
- B. Respond to the following:
- 1. What about going for a picnic? (Agree) (Disagree)

(Disagree)

- 2. Can I help you? (Agree)
- **2. A.** 1. You stopped someone in the street. Your want to know the time. What would you say ?
- 2. You are at the airport information desk you want to ask about the arrival of a plane. What do you say?
- 3. You have just finished writing a cheque in a bank. Another customer needs to borrow your pen. What would he say?
- B. Respond to the following:
- 4. Will you go with me to the cinema? (Disagree)
- 5. Will you take this book as a present? (Agree)
- 3. A. What would you say when you want to:
- Invite someone to go with you to the cinema.
- 2. Ask someone if he is interested in music.
- Ask someone if he succeeded in getting what he needed.
- B. Respond to the following:
- 1. Would you like to come with me to see the match? (Agree)

 Thank you for your help. A.1. Someone has invited you to go and see a hor only rerely like such thing. What would you sate. Your friend Usama is talking to you. Usama: I hear you are flying to Europe. 	ror film. You ly ?
You:	•••
Usama: Oh? I thought it was all fixed.	(Fill)
B. Respond to the following:	(*)
Respond to the following Would you like to go water - skiing?	(Disagree)
 Would you like to go water sking? Would it be possible for you to post this letter? 	(Agree)
2. Would it be possible for you to post this letter.	(Agrée)
5. A. What would you say when you want to:	ısis
1. Ask someone if he agrees with your opinion in mu	ISIC.
2. Offer someone a new idea.	
3. Offer someone to help when his car broke down.	
B. Respond to the following:	
1. How do you do?	
·	e-Disagree)
6.A. 1. You have been invited to join a family for a tri	
seaside. You agreed. What would	
2. You are writing a letter to an old friend whom	
seen for a long time. How do you end the let	
3. A friend of yours is going to have an operation. \	What will
you say?	
B. Respond to the following:	
 Can you book me a flight please? (Agree) 	Disagree)
Would you like an orange? (Agree	e/Disagree)
A. What would you say when you want to:	
1. Ask someone if he is able to repair your car.	
2. Ask someone to lend you his notebook.	
3. Say you are unable to deal with the problem.	
B. Respond to the following:	
 Shall I take your bag sir? (Agre 	e-Disagree)
2. Could you wait just a minute please? (Agree) -
O.A. 1. Someone has invited you to see a film. After	rwards he
asks you your opinion about it. What does he say	?

- 2. Your holiday in Britain with your friend Magdy is just finishing. He suddenly says. "I've decided not to go back home. I'm going to search for work here. It was a surprise to you. What would you say?
- 3. A friend of yours informs you that he will get married next week. What do you say?

B. Respond to the following:

- Could you post this letter for me please? (Agree)
- 2. Would you mind coming with me for a walk? (Agree-Disagree)

9. A. What would you say when you want to:

- 1. Ask someone if he knows the way to the Pyramids.
- Ask someone to give you information about how to book a room in a hotel.
- 3. Say you agree with someone in his plan.

B. Respond to the following:

1. Would you like some butter?

(Agree-Disagree)

2. Shall I open the window?

(Agree-Disagree)

10.A. What would you say?

- 1. To someone who is smoking in a crowded room?
- 2. What would you say to somebody who is shouting while the baby is asleep?
- 3. What would you say to a friend who wants to borrow your dictionary?

B. Agree to the following:

- 1. Your friend wants you to help him with his homework.
- 2. Your friend wants you to give him a lift to the bank.

11. A. What would say when you want to:

- Advise someone to give up smoking.
- Suggest to go camping.
- 3. Ask for a phone number.

B. Respond to the following:

1. May I have reception please?

(Agree-Disagree)

2. I'd like to book a room in your hotel.

12.1.At a formal dinner party. Your hostess is talking to you. "May" "I ask you if you are fond of this country?"

(E;II)
You(Fill). 2. Someone you have met at your hotel suggests that you go to
2. Someone you have thet at your refuse
the cinema together - you refuse.
He: there is a good film at Metro.
You (Fill).
3. At your school you suggest an end year party. What do you
say to your colleagues?
4. Laila has a dinner at Samia's flat. She offers to help her with
the wash up. What does she say ?
5. An old lady is trying to lift a heavy suitcase. Offer to help her.
13.A. What would you say when you want to:
1. Borrow a book from a friend.
Agree to lend someone your dictionary.
3. Ask permission to leave your work.
B. Respond to the following:
1. I wonder if you'd excuse me for a minute, please? (Agree)
2. Can I have some of this material? (Agree)
14. Ask your friend to do the following:
1. Open the window halfway.
2. Move your chair a bit.
3. Pay attention to what you say.
4. Switch off the radio as the baby is asleep.
5. Stop smoking for the place is crowded.
15. 1. You are a bit tired. Ask your teacher to give you permission
to leave five minutes early.
You are going to your friend's birthday party and you will be
late. Ask your father to give you permission to be late.
3. Ask your headmaster to give you two day's off to be able to
attend your cousin's wedding in Assuit.
4. You and a friend are planning a party but you want to do
something unusual.
You:(Fill)
Your friend: That's a great idea.
가는 사람들이 되었다. 그런 그 이 이 이 이 이 이 이 이 사람들이 되었다. 그 사람들이 아니는 사람들이 되었다. 그 사람들이 아니는 사람들이 되었다. 2018년 - 1980년

5. You are attending a language school in London you have been asked to know someone's views about the language school in Oxford. What would you say?

16. A. What would you say when you want to:

- 1. Say you don't know the way.
- 2. Say you are unable to accept someone's invitation.
- 3. Refuse to lend someone your bicycle.

Respond to the following:

- I wonder if I could possibly ask you to move to a table near the window? (Agree).
- 2. Could you possibly lend me your typewriter? (refuse)
- **17.** 1. You are at the national circus. After the show you ask your friend his opinion. **What would you say?**
- 2. You want to go on a weekend camping trip with your friend.

What do you say?

3. You are talking to another guest at a hotel with whom you are sharing a table. You ask him about the service at the hotel.

What would you say?

- 4. You are at the "Opera House" you ask your friend if he is interested in the show. What would you say?
- You and a close colleague at work are chatting about leisure activities. Your favourite pastime is watching television. Ask about his.

18. A. What would you say when you want to:

- 1. Advise someone to walk rather than take a taxi.
- 2. Warn someone against the bad results of smoking.
- 3. Advise your friend not to be late.
- 4. Suggest to go for a picnic.
- 5. Ask someone's help in carrying a heavy basket.
- 19. 1. Bill a friend of yours, suggests that the two of you go to a dance party. You say "I must admit I don't take any interest in dancing."
 What does he say?
- 2. At work you and a friend have a complex problem to solve. You say "The computer is out of order what shall we do?"

What does he say?

- 3. You are having dinner with a fellow guest at your hotel by the seaside you say "I did not see you at breakfast? Why was that?"

 What would be say?
- 4. You have been watching a T.V. programme on America's space programme with your friend Tom. "Hm! I think the whole thing is a complete waste of time" He disagreed with you.

What did he say?

5. You work for an engineering firm. You are talking to a friend there John. You say you will think most of us will have an electric car in ten or fifteen years time.

John: Could be, but (Complete).

20. A What would you say when you want to:

- 1. Warn your friend against bad habits.
- 2. Warn a child that he will get burnt if he plays with matches.
- 3. Advise your friend not to lose his temper.
- 4. Respond to the following:
- Do you think you will go abroad this year. (Disagree).
- If you like, I would do the washing up? (Disagree).
- 21. 1. You and a friend Ted are discussing a new pay offer your for your management .

Ted: I think their offer is pretty fair.

You : Yes, but (Complete).

- You are driving from Cairo to Ismailia. Got lost. Ask a policeman the way. What do you say?
- 3. Someone you have met by chance in the street wants to chat with you. You remembered you had an appointment. What would you say?
- 4. A young man is trying to push his car. The battery is flat. You offer to help him. What do you say?
- 5. You are in a bookshop. You want a book on the top shelf but can't reach. The assistance comes up with a ladder. What does he say?

Ex. (78)Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning.

1. You can't deny that his handwriting has improved. (can't be)

2. We mustn't disobey our teachers.	(be)
- didn't speak a word (Not a)	
The river Nile is the longest river in the world.	(longer)
4. The river line is the longest river in the world.	
L MINI VIS CITE COMPANY	(taller)
	(keen)
7. Fady felt asleep in class this morning. Surely he st	
late last night. (must)	
8. When I was a child. I was very shy whenever a st	ranger
came in.	(used)
9. "Are you enjoying yourself? he asked me.	(if)
10. Although it rained hard, the match was played. (1	In spite of)
to bring all this food	(have)
11. It wasn't necessary for you to bring an this root. 12. I recommend you to visit the Picasso exhibition. ((worth)
13. Perhaps they're having lunch in the canteen.	(might)
14. Could I make an appointment to see the doctor.	(mind)
14. Could I make all appointment to see the determinent	
15. The leaders finally agreed about how to end war. (agree	ment)
16. Winter is the season. I go to Aswan in this season	heart
17. Dr. Christian Bernard performed the first human	(by)
transplant.	ne had said.
18. He said he was sorry he didn't understand what i	gized)
그는 그 그는 이 이 이 이 이 아이들은 사람이 하셨습니까? 그 아이들은 사람이 아이들은 아이들은 아이들은 사람이 아니는 아이들은 아이들은 아이들은 아이들은 아이들은 아이들은 아이들은 아이들은	(refused)
19. He said he wouldn't take that job.	
20. My father says that he isn't angry to do this kind	(mind)
21. My father told me it was wonderful to pass the d	ratulated)
22. I always sat at the back of the classroom, but no	(used)
sit in the front row.	(better)
23. You should obey the speed limit.	The Control of the Co
23. You should obey the speed and 24. You are broke because you spent all your money (shouldn't h	ave)
(Silvarant admiration for	the new
25. The President expressed his great admiration for	(admired)
production.	•
26. You are cold because you didn't wear a coat. (s)	(lond)
27 Can I borrow 25 pounds from you?	(lella)
28. He's borrowed more than 2000 from his parents	. (owe)
29. They pay him L 200 a week.	(earn)
를 보다는 것이다. [1] [1] [1] 전 보고 있습니다. [1] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2	

	2
30. He bought that jacket for L 300.	(paid)
31. Since they were keen to learn French, they have	gone to
Paris.	(Due to)
32. They will never pass the test without knowing the	(unles)
	(unless) (who)
33. The man drawing the sailing boat is my cousin.	
34. Although he knows Chinese, he wasn't chosen to	(Despite)
ambassador in China.	(Despite)
35. We decided not to go riding because the weather	was bau.
그는 그들은 요즘 그 전에 발표를 받았다. 그렇게 되었다면 하다면 그리고 있다면 사람이 되었다. 그렇게 살아 그렇게 되었다.	use of)
36. He's well qualified for the job except for his lack of	t that)
experience:	t that)
or. I about to live in cariada.	(anymore) (had)
of comedite repaired in the index	•
39. Leave early because the roads might be crowded.	
40. Greek isn't as useful as English.	intelligent
41. He is better looking than I am but I'm much more	(as as)
42. I prefer living in Egypt to living in Britain. (would	
그 그리다고 하는 것이 되었다. 그렇게 하는 그리고 하는데 하는데 하는데 하는데 하는데 하는데 하는데 하는데 되었다.	(typing)
44. While I was walking through the park, I heard a lo	
그런 그렇게 얼마 그리트를 하는 것이 되는 사람들이 되었다. 그런 사람들이 되었다. 그런 그렇게 되었다. 그런 그렇게 되었다. 그런 그렇게 되었다.	(when)
45. He said to me, "Did you have a good day at school	
	(whether)
46. She was not careful when she was driving, so she	•
그는 이 이 그렇게 되면 하게 되었다. 그 전에 이 하게 되었다면 하다면 하다면 하는데 하는데 하다면 하지만 하지만 하다.	(if)
47. I didn't have enough time, so I couldn't visit my a	unt. (if)
48. I would rather be a child than an old man. (prefe	er)
49. It's very cold. You really should stay indoors. (bet	tter)
50. I'll help you with your Maths only if you help me v	vith my
English. (provid	led that)
51. I would only agree to share a room with my sister	if she
promised to take my things. (as long	g as)
52. I speak Frénch well. (knowl	edge)
53. I've worked as a tourist guide for ten years. (exp	erience)
54. I've travelled a lot. (experi	enced)
55. I wonder how he will react when I tell him the new	
	(reaction)

	we are both ad from here till for	
-	We sunbathed from two till four.	(spent)
		myself)
58.	They played football although it was raining heav	ily. (heavy)
59.	He didn't hand his homework so he was punished	d. (if)
60.	I prefer eating out to cooking for myself.	(easier)
61.	He was a strong boxer.	(used)
62.	No answer pleased his teacher.	(whatever)
63.	I like very much listening to music.	(fond)
64.	What do you think about electric cars?	(opinion)
	The 2000 Nobel Prize for Chemistry went to Dr. 2	
		(awarded)
66.	You should turn off your mobile when you are in	•
	rain.	(supposed)
	I was born in that city.	(That's)
	Friday is the day. We go for a walk then.	
	The woman's purse was stolen. She called the po	
05.	The Wellard purse was sected and are pe	(.whose)
70	"Is what I heard true?" he said.	(if)
	It's vital that no one else should know about the	
/1.	It's vital that no one else should know about the	(mustn't)
72	He is free to go any place he wishes.	(wherever)
72.	You shouldn't eat a heavy meal and then go to b	to the second se
73.	Because the traffic was heavy, we were late for t	he meeting.
/4.	because the traine was neavy, we were	(Due to)
75	The car was expensive. We couldn't afford to buy	it. (such)
75.	Please be quiet. I want to hear what the teacher	says.
70.	Flease be quied I want to make	(so that)
77	According to the news report, it will rain tonight	or it will rain
	tomorrow.	(either)
78		(not only)
70.	Her roommates don't know where she is. Her mo	ther doesn't
	know where she is.	(Neither)
	She goes to school. She has a full time job too.	(Not only)
	Due to recent improvements in medical services,	
	easily find beds in hospitals.	(recently)
	Since the weather was bad, we postponed our tri	And the best to the first of
52.		count of)
	(on acc	,

83. Alaa was worried about the exam. He could	n't get to sleep.
	(too)
84. Thanks to his intelligence, he could overcon	ne his difficulties.
	ntelligent)
85. The little boy pretended to be sick. He want	ed to stay at
home from school.	(so as to)
86. I unplugged the phone. I didn't want to be	
	o as not to)
87. Walking down the street, I ran into an old fr	- T
88. Having seen that movie before, I didn't wan	t to go again.
oo. Thaving Seen that movie before, I didn't want	(because)
89. When I read the figures again, I found that	
mistake.	(On)
90. Without his help, I would have lost my life.	
91. Intelligent as he was, he failed to face his pr	
J. Triceingent as the was, the falled to face this pr	(Although)
92. I've never eaten such a good meal.	(It's)
93. The teacher said that Osama didn't pay atter	
lesson.	(accused)
94. In spite of her beauty, she didn't attract any	and the second second
95. Nagi: Yes, all right I won't tell anyone. (as	
96. She didn't work hard enough, so she lost her	
	he reason)
97. There are no seats for tonight's performance	
(Tonight's perfo	rmance)
98. She is slower and a more careful driver than	I am. (drives)
99. No one in the group is younger than her.	
100. Why don't we go to the new Indian restauran	nt? (suggested)
101. She can help me and I can help her.	(We)
102. It began to rain during the picnic.	(While)
103. Everyone shouted at the van driver because	he didn't stop at
the crossroads.	(blamed)
104. They couldn't play the match because of the	weather. They
plan to play it next week. (po	ostponed)
105. My suit needs to be cleaned before the inter-	view. (I must)
106. Without good treatment, the patient would h	ave died.
	(Unless)

107. The cook is brilliant but he knows nothing about foods. 108. I paid a lot of money for that shirt. 109. Can't you find a sharper knife? 110. You'd better take a sweater. It might get cold. (111. I have never been to the ballet before.	(as) (cost) (Is this)
112. Janet never saves money. That's why she never 113. I couldn't mend the puncture in my tyre. A mech	has any.(If)
114. Bill's tooth is rotten and it's hurting him. He is go dentist to fill it.115. Samia felt sorry she was late for an appointment	oing to the (have)
	ogized)
116. Tom is not rich enough to do all the things he w	(wishes)
117. All the shops are closed this afternoon.	(None)
118. The bus was too crowded to get on.	
119. Mary lives in a noisy district.	(wishes)
120. You never know what's on the note-board. You	never look
125, 166 115 115	(If)
121. Tom hates the town he lives in. London is his dr	eam.
	(wishes)
122. Being so selfish, she left him.	(Unless)
123. No one has ever used this television.	(been)
124 Sho know him and he knew her.	(They)
125. If I were you, I'd go to the police and tell them	everything.
그렇게 되었다. 그리고 있다는 이 이번에 가는 장면이 하는 부모로 이 가는 이 모르겠다. 없는 회원은	(auvisca)
126. We expressed our joy when Engy passed her ex	ams.
(Cong	latulateu
127. The customer complained that he didn't get the	noney back.
	plained of)
128. He bought the shop. He had little money of his	(Dosnita)
	(Despite)
129. Tom was unable to travel abroad. He lost his pa	result of
	result of)
130. Naul Ollered his help back to site site	(the only)
131. The captain left the ship. Everyone else had left	before.
	(the last)

132. You forgot a map, so we lost our way. 133. You'd better book a table. The restaurant might	(Unless) be full.
134. Unfortunately the plan failed. 135. It's a pity we sold the piano.	(in case) (We wish) (If only)
136. I can't tolerate all that pollution.	(put)
137. It's ages since Alan visited his parents.	(Alan)
138. It started to rain two hours ago.	(has been)
139. I'm sorry that I didn't learn to swim when I was	younger.
	(regret)
140. In spite of his lack of experience, he got a job. (A	(Ithough)
	(Being)
142. The letter was delivered although it didn't have e	nough
postage.	(despite)
143. You have to wear your seat belt.	(supposed)
144. He agreed that he had committed the crime. (
145. I am eager to have a walk in the fresh air.	•
146. I didn't want to laugh but I couldn't. (could	
147. It is a fact that the countryside is free from pollut	ion.
	dvantage)
148. We are to bring our own pencils to the test. (sup	posed)
149. I was reading a sentence when the teacher stopp	ed me.
1FO The beautiful in the second secon	(while)
150. It began to rain last night. It's still raining.	(since)
151. They climbed the mountain although it was very l	
152 Ho is upharman	(However)
152. He is unhappy even though he has a fortune. (WI	natever)
153. Sally was very sad, but she smiled and pretended	to be
having a good time.	(However)
154. I am not you, so I don't' tell him the truth.	(If)
155. I would have gone to Paris last year if I had enough	igh money.
156. Lamia looked and (In cas	se of)
156. Lamia looked sad, surly she hasn't passed her exa	am.
157. Children quaht to go to I	have)
- Jou Walli IO bo 5 L	
(Would	I)

159. I prefer looking round a museum to watching a basketball match. (would rather) 160. "Were you on the way home?" she said. (wondered) 161. Daniel can run fast and so can Engy. 162. Mr. Bill is driving too fast. The speed limit is 50 miles an hour. (better) 163. "Can you lend me some money?" she said. (wanted me)	
164. He was not able to make money while he was abroad. (failed)	
165. Yasser had to go home on his own. 166. She hated being in the house on her own. 167. You can't expect them to do everything on their	(himself) (alone)
(themselves)	
168. Nearly all the seats were booked.	(most)
169. Practising sports makes you very healthy.	(health)
170. Jane has offered to lend you the money.	(willing)
171. I didn't have a very good time.	(enjoy)
172. She's learning French at home without a teacher. (herself)	
173. She tried to commit suicide.	(herself)
174. You shouldn't think it is your fault.	(blame)
175. Mary is showing me some of her photographs.	(hers)
176. I am going to see my friend.	(mine)
177. Mary's books don't look so new as Jane's do.	(newer)
178. Mary's eyes are blue like the sea.	(asas)
170. The last time I went to Paris was In 1990.	(since)
180. Collecting dolls from foreign countries is one of Janet's	
interests (IIICCStCu)	
181. I don't mind how long it takes to answer all que	estions.
그 그 그 그 그 그 그 가는 그 그 사람이 그 그 그가 살아보는 것이 없는 것이 없었다.	(Tou carr)
182. How long is it since they bought the house?	(When)
183 I haven't played tennis for ages.	(It's ages)
184. Though he has a good salary, he was unnappy	in the job. (Despite)
185. Graham was rude to Louisa. He didn't mean it.	
(Graham didn't mean)	
186. We had never stayed in a more expensive hotel	like that. (That's)
	된 생 시간을 보다면 살아가 되었다. 이번 그리스 없는 ^^ -

.....

187. Without computers, many of the miracles of our age would be (Unless) impossible. (The more) 188. If you eat more, you'll become fat. 189. He used both hands because he didn't want to drop anything. (lest) 190. It's Mary's job to look after the new staff. (responsible) 191. The accident happened because the train driver was careless. (If) (better) 192. I advise you to study hard. 193. Perhaps your teacher will punish you. (you) (Although) 194. Bats can fly, but they are not birds 195. She finds visits to the dentist very frightening. (frightened) 196. I'm surprised they only fired her. She deserved to be sent to (must have) prison. 197. It was a waste of my time making all these sandwiches. They (needn't have) had plenty of food there already. 198. It wasn't easy, but we saved the girl in time. (managed) 199. He travelled to Italy last year and didn't send letters.(since) 200. He refused to do the task. (objected) 201. The men were wearing protective clothes, so they were all (Hadn't it) quite safe.

Ex.(79) Choose the correct answer between brackets:

- He often turns (out in on up) at parties without invitation.
- He will put his (word signature say prints) on the contract.
- I watched the ship until it was (in out off on) of sight.
- (As No sooner As soon as Soon) he realized the truth, he informed the police.
- 5. Who got the (high higher height highest) mark in class?
- The house (which where whose who) he lives, needs repairing.
- He made her (write to write wrote writing) the report four times.
- Could you look (in at after for) the kids while I go shopping?
- I wish I (come can come came could come) a bit later tomorrow.

10. He won't catch the train if he (didn't pack - won't pack wouldn't pack - does not pack) soon.

11. He'll explain the point again, (won't he - would he - will

he - wouldn't he)?

12. He has always been a hard worker and still (has - was - is - has been).

13. They will paint the house (in - for - at - since) three days.

- 14. I tried to telephone you yesterday, but you weren't (off in - on - out).
- 15. They are running out of food. They (haven't much have much - have none - have a lot) left.
- 16. He arrived late at the station, so he (caught won lost missed) the train.
- 17. After trying several times, I (succeeded could would managed) to see him.
- 18. He offered to (help pay borrow lend) her as the suitcase was too heavy for her to carry.
- 19. He was (charged changed accused convicted) with murder.
- 20. Her mother made her (practised practise playing practising) the piano all afternoon.

21. You (must - mustn't - can't - needn't) make noise, the baby is asleep.

22. As he is a policeman, he is (used - been used - use using) to keeping away all night.

23. I crossed the street to avoid (speak - spoke - speaking to speak) to that terrible man.

24. I really am angry you are so late, you (had to - would ought to - should to) have telephoned.

25. All day long he worked in the fields, so in the evening he (fell - went - turned - grew) asleep before he finished his supper.

26. The firemen worked very hard to put (on - in - out - off) the fire.

27. I was unable to eat the food as it was (too - much - so very)salty.

28. I was afraid (to - in - of - at) mentioning the news to him.

29. She has been in Aswan (ago - from - for - since) nine years.

30. When the table was (lain - lied - loaded - laid), the mother called her children.

31. He has plenty of money. He (needn't - mustn't shouldn't - couldn't) earn his living.

32. Would you mind my (open – opened – to open –

opening) the window?

33. Do you know (who – which – whom – whose) was responsible for the damage?

34. He is (too – so – very – enough) deaf to hear what we

say.

- 35. The (clerk official officer shop assistant) who served me in that store was very helpful.
- 36. I'm coming in your car, (don't I-aren't I-shan't I-isn't I)?
- 37. Adel is (more the more most the most) interesting painter I have ever known.

38. I am very tired because I had hardly (any - enough some - much) sleep last night.

39. The examination will end in a few (days' - dates - day's days) time.

40. We (did - had - gave - took) a short break over week end

between lessons.

- 41. Who (invented discovered planned found) the television?
- 42. This is the writer (who which whom whose) book was made into a film?
- 43. Here take it. I have (yet-still soon already) finished it.
- 44. (Do Would Will Should) you like me to buy you a copy for your birthday?

45. Maha is three years old. She is (too - so - very - enough) young to go out alone.

46. A:"I love reading." B:(I do so-so I am-so I do-so do I).

47. He heard the news. The news (are-was-with-were) bad.

48. Ali is putting on his coat. Laila "If you (going - went have gone - are going) out, please buy me the newspaper.

49. I hate (borrow-borrowed-to borrow-borrowing)money

- 50. I have not seen my uncle (when for before since) I was a child.
- 51. He has a car so he (needn't wouldn't mustn't shouldn't) take a bus.

52. Everyone burst out laughing. There was a lot of (laugh laughed - laughs - laughter).

53. The next race will take (part - off - away - place) in a year's time.

54. My brother (used to – is using – was using – was used to) smoke a great deal.

55. It's a cheerful occasion. It's a cheerful (event - condition - situation - accident).

- 56. There's (the fear fear a fear fearful) that he may not be alive.
- 57. It was not difficult to move into my new house, as I did not have (many more much several) furniture.
- 58. The bush area is full of lions, some of them are (men eater men eaters men eaters men eating).
- 59. The sooner you do this work, (the good the better the best the worse) for you.
- 60. In the mile race, the winner was Nagi (who whom which whose) broke the school record for the distance.
- 61. The more money you earn, (the high the highest the higher highest) the percentage we pay in taxes.
 - 62. If I had left my house earlier. I should (have caught catch caught be catching) the train.
 - 63. I didn't like the man, he made me (to feel felt feel feeling) a fool.
 - 64. I stood on the platform watching a train (comes coming to come came) in.
 - 65. Need he go so soon? Yes, he (needs must may would) if he wants to get home in time.
 - 66. If Mary were here, she (had shown would show will show would have shown) you how to cook.
 - 67. I know where the Opera House was, so I (needn't wait didn't need to wait didn't need waiting mustn't need to wait) for a guide to take me there.
 - 68. We have been waiting for a bus (since for from with in) the past thirty minutes.
 - 69. They (made had did gave) a dreadful fight when they got home.
 - 70. If Ihab had ever been told the result, he wouldn't have been happy. From the sentence above we know that (Ihab didn't know the result- Ihab was not happy about the result Ihab was happy when he heard about the result Ihab was sad about the result).
 - 71. Though our train was late, we got (to home home for home at home) in time for dinner.

- 72. The house (which when where in where) the murder was committed is being watched by detectives.
- 73. "Must you leave at once?" No, I (mustn't needn't–hadn't haven't), I can stay for another half hour if you like.
- 74. He's bought a very good-looking dog, (doesn't he wasn't he hasn't he is he)?
- 75. Try to reduce your expenses. (cut out cut short cut up cut down).
- 76. The nearest town is (a days' journey a day journey a day's journey a journey of a day).
- 77. "How many matches have you got left?" Only (a little little a few small).
- 78. After receiving (much information any information some information little information) about the accident, the police acted properly.
- 79. I can't imagine myself (to stand stand to have stood standing) in the hot sun the whole day long.
- 80. Mary expects (to see to have seen seeing to seeing) the work done when she comes back.
- The father of many children (must has should are) to work hard to earn his living.
- Let's go as soon as Nagi(is coming-came-comes-will come)
- Ayman will be ready in a minute. He (is having had could have would have had) a bath.
- 84. **(By worrying Worrying Worry Through worrying)** much, made him irritable.
- 85. Give her the telephone number (unless perhaps in case whether) she gets lost.
- 86. The convict denied (having to have had of having) any knowledge of the stolen money.
- 87. The weak often (dies die died are dying) young.
- 88. "You have never been honest", (are-do-have-weren't)you
- 89. When Mary and I saw the snake, she screamed, I couldn't kill it, neither could she. From this sentence we know that (I was more cowardly than Mary one of us tried to kill the snake, but failed Mary couldn't kill the snake and I couldn't either both killed the snake).
- 90. John doesn't intend to go to the party, and (no so neither either) do I.

91. Will you please stop interfering (with - into - on against) my work.

92. That couldn't be Osama you saw me with last night. I haven't seen him (for - since - from - during) ages.

93. I haven't seen him since he (had got married - has got married - got married - got marrying).

94. Nagi promised to attend to his father who was ill (look at look after - look on - look for).

95. We (were going - are going - used to go - going) to Ras El Bar in summer. Now we go to Alexandria.

96. The producer asked the actors to put (off - down - on in) their costumes and be ready to go on the stage.

97. The teacher wouldn't even look (on - for - at - upon) my work, he says my handwriting is shocking.

98. You are advised to drink (some - much - many - plenty) fresh water to keep healthy.

99. I'm going to (make-take-have-do) my dress dry cleaned.

100. You didn't see (someone - everyone - anyone - none) in the room at all. It was completely empty.

101. Our cat and dog are always fighting (themselves - each other – the others – both).

102. Each of us (was - love - were - has) been carrying an umbrella.

103. The bill came over a thousand dollars (at all - in all - to all - of all).

104. I can't resist (to wear - wore - wearing - to wearing)

105. (Would I have been - Had I been - Should I be - I had been) wise, I would have taken a later plane.

106. The boy was sorry and begged his father (if he would forgive - to forgive - for forgiving - be forgiven) him.

107. (No - Never - None - Not) amount of money can buy happiness.

108. I can't help laughing at him. from this sentence we know (I can't laugh at him-I'm laughing because it is impossible not to-I enjoy laughing at him - I managed to laugh at him).

109. You had better (to do - doing - have done - do) your work if you want to pass.

110. We must hurry now, (mustn't - needn't - should aren't) we?

- 111. You needn't rush through your food, (needn't would need should) you?
- 112. That is the writer (who her books who's books whose books his books) have been such a success.
- 113. I forgot to take my umbrella (and so and as a result because unless) I got wet.
- 114. The (weight density number thickness) of population in cities makes life difficult.
- 115. Because he was worried about his health, he decided to (cut out-break down-cut down- knock down) smoking.
- 116. (Lately Later Latter Late), scientists have observed increased pollution in the water supply.
- 117. If my dearest friend is in trouble, I should help him (should shall shouldn't shan't) I?
- 118. We (haven't haven't had hadn't had hadn't) any rain for the last month.
- 119. When she visited us, we asked her if she (was wanting will want wanted wants) tea or coffee for breakfast.
- 120. He asked me why I (do not visit have not been visiting had not visited wasn't visiting) him before.
- 121. The students wished they (had been invited—weren't inviting—could be invited—have been invited)to the party.
- 122. Everyone seems to know Adel Imam, (don't they didn't they doesn't they does they)?
- 123. Samy (mustn't work needn't have worked needn't work mustn't have worked) on week-ends, he does it because he enjoys it.
- 124. (Could Were Should Might) he to look for us, he would not be able to find us.
- 125. It is high time you (changed must change have changed should change) your childish ways.
- 126. What a busy day it's been, (wasn't it isn't it hasn't it doesn't it)?
- 127. It is getting late. You (had better go would rather go have better go better go).
- 128. Hany spends money(as-as if-like-just)it grows on trees.
- 129. The materials in the first store we went to are superior (than beyond to over) these.

- 130. My brother has gone to the city to look for (work job some work working).
- 131. John may not pass the examination, but he will do (his possible best his best the best possible best).
- 132. He was staring (hard hardly hardening hardy) at the enemy.
- 133. They **(bad badly great ever)** misunderstood what he had said.
- 134. He gave me two oranges but (all both some either) were bad.
- 135. When I asked him his name, he refused to tell me (whom who which whose) he was.
- 136. I don't know how you came to that conclusion. Ihab, but you have hit the nail on the head. The speaker of this sentence thinks Ihab is (close to the truth a good but uneducated thinker— absolutely right far from right).
- 137. On doctors orders the patient <u>cut out smoking</u> (stopped omitted cancelled postponed).
- 138. You won't come in till I (had seen shall see have to see see saw) your ticket.
- 139. This jacket doesn't fit properly. It's far (too small small enough so small very small) for me.
- 140. If you (will leave have left leave left) this job before next year, your will annoy your father.
- 141. There's still (hope a hope hoping hopeful) that he may live.
- 142. The netball match (had begun was to begin will begin began) before the principal arrives.
- 143. We (made went had did) for a swim every morning before breakfast.
- 144. He is the man (whom I am knowing trustworthy who I know is trustworthy who I know him to be trustworthy is trustworthy).
- 145. On Tuesday we played hockey and (on next day the next day the day next that day) we played football.
- 146. The bigger the memory is, the (more most much many) useful the computer is.
- 147. The news that the thief killed all his children sounded too fantastic to be believed. This means that the news was (actually true partially true very strange and difficult to believe true and easy to believe).

148. You can enjoy yourself in a big city (even when – so far – provided that – unless) you have enough money.

16

16

11

1

1

- 149. Reading (between along across through) the lines of her letter, I'm sure Janet is homesick.
- 150. If only my father could win some money? Ashraf exclaimed. From this sentence we know that Ashraf (is hoping his father will win some money expects his father and no one else to win money is certain that his father is able to win some money— believes his father will win).
- 151. You had better stop (to be being been having been) late from school.
- 152. Whenever the baby cried, the mother (sighs sighed will sigh could sigh).
- 153. Have you any objection (being asked to asking to ask asking) him to lunch?
- 154. The Mansons have moved. They don't live here (anymore no longer still yet).
- 155. Somebody told me that story, I've forgotten (whom who whose which)?
- 156. Don't make any noise, (will do won't don't) you.
- 157. Do you often dine with the girls at the restaurant? No, I (scarcely ever scarcely never scarcely seldom scarcely not) do.
- 158. I avoided (mentioning mention to mention mentioned) the subject to him.
- 159. They had (feeling the feeling a feeling any feeling) that he was still alive.
- 160. No sooner had the bell rung (when than as that) the boys assembled.
- 161. Although he is slow (he is very accurate he is not accurate therefore he is very accurate but he is very accurate).
- 162. He had a good sleep after he (has had had had) a heavy lunch.
- 163. The tooth was so bad that he (has to have had to have has had must have) it taken out.
- 164. As soon as she saw the girls, she asked them what they (had been doing-have been doing-have done-are doing)

165. You needn't (have told - tell - told - be telling) a lie when the headmaster asked for your fees.

166. I saw the accused (ran – having run – run – is running)

away from the house.

167. You (would have to pay - would have had to pay would pay - will have to pay) if your friend hadn't had any money.

168. We were all astonished when we saw the house (where -

which - that - when) he had lived.

169. The antiquities of Egypt (over which - about which through whom - of which) such a lot has been written, should never he lost.

170. Both teachers and pupils would (very much - almost -

very well - mostly) like to have a holiday today.

171. As the senior perfect, he ought to have known better, (should be - ought he - oughtn't he - wouldn't he)?

172. This is something you are not certain about (isn't it aren't it - is it - are you)?

173. The minister (as well as us - as well as us all - as well as all of us - and we all) was present at the ceremony.

174. The driver went slowly (not to overturn - that he may not overturn - so as not to overturn - so as to overturn) the load.

175. My wife prefers playing the piano (to - than - from -

rather) listening to music.

176. The longer we do nothing, the (much - many - more most) serious the problem becomes.

177. By this time next year, Wail (should have - had - will have - would have) completed his degree course at Cambridge University.

178. (Having living - Having to live - To have lived - To have live) on a small salary when one has a large family is

not easy.

179. Those interested in the post of Assistant Manager are requested to apply (as persons - in person - by person with person).

180. When he explained the conditions, he asked me (what would I do - what I would do - I would do what what will I do).

181. (In - To - With - For) her opinion, he was thoroughly unfit for the job.

182. (In case of – Although – Unless – In spite of) having no talents, the man became a popular TV. personality.

183. We got up at four in the morning. We had to make a very (new – early – bright – running) start.

184. It wasn't easy to put (up with - away with - on with - off with) her bad temper.

- 185. This time next year, you (would learn will learn will have learned would have learned) a lot of English.
- 186. He's very pleased (at with on by) his new secretary.
- 187. Her mother was very unjust (at for to with) the youngest daughter.
- 188. (Only Just Hardly Yet) had he put down the receiver when the phone rang again.
- 189. They are said (having been to be been have been) very ill.
- 190. She can't stand (to listen listening listen to be listening) to music like that.
- 191. No matter (how difficult does it seem however seems difficult – how difficult it seems – however it seems difficult), you must keep trying.
- 192. This is her book. (Moreover Indeed However Also) you may borrow it.
- 193. He is rather lazy. (Indeed Nevertheless Moreover In spite) he always passes his exam.
- 194. She was ill. (However Yet Nevertheless Consequently) she stayed at home.
- 195. You can hardly believe he's gone, (do you -believe you can you isn't it)?
- 196. There was a time when he (speaking used to speak is speaking would have spoken) French frequently.
- 197. Smoking is a very bad habit which many people find difficult to (break beat breath begins).
- 198. He is an **(optimistic anxious experienced active)** person. He looks forward to winning the prize.
- 199. According to the weather (forecast future expectancy experience) they still expect a rise in temperature.
- 200. He was (prepared promoted proved produced) for a job of a manager in another branch.

Advanced Exercises

Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Take some money, you will need it.	(case)
2- The car was very expensive, he couldn't af	ford it. (such)
3- The man with the black umbrella is Mr. Jor	
4- They locked the car. They were afraid som	
	(fear)
5- There was thick fog, so the plane couldn't	take off. (due)
6- Operating a computer is difficult.	(It's)
7- The examination lasted three hours.	(hour)
8- Would you like to come to the cinema with	me? (coming)
9- If he hadn't reacted so quickly, we would h	nave been killed.
	(reaction)
10- Now that I wear contact lenses, the opti	cian tests my eyes
every three months.	(have)
11- It's possible to obtain tickets from most	music stores.
	(obtained)
12- The headmaster insisted that all the pur	ils wear school
uniform.	(made)
13- Someone should have already made all	the arrangements for
the business meeting.	(been)
14- Peter had fed the dog by the time Julie	
15-It is said that this diet is rich in vitamins.	(be)
16-Her dress needs shortening before the we	
17-I'm sure he wasn't lying when he told us t	
18-If you let me know in time, I'll be able to l	book tickets. (long)
19-Although he is inexperienced, he always p	uts forward good
ideas.	(lack)
20-The excursion was so relaxing that we felt	refreshed
afterwards.	(such)
21-Bad behaviour in the classroom is somethi	ng I will not
tolerant.	(put)

22-I finished the book in two days. 23-Shall we spend the day on the beach? 24-Your hair needs cutting. 25-She has never been so insulted before. (Never beach) 26-"You've caused a lot of pain to my family." She sa	(took) (spending) (have) fore) id to him. (of)
27-Simon hasn't been to New York for two years. 28-They took a taxi because they didn't want to be la 29-I paid L300 for the tape recorder. 30-They asked whose fault the breakage was. 31-Tom can run faster than Dan.	(last) te. (not to) (me) (blame) (runner)
 33- It was careless of him to leave the oven on. 34- Although he was tall, he couldn't reach the shelf. (35- Juli's stories amused everybody last night. 36- "You'd better think carefully before you make a desaid 	now what to (shocking) (should) (Despite) (found) ecision" he
37- "You would have enjoyed the film but you didn't se said.38- It was unwise of him to believe the weather forecast.	(if) ast.
 39-He would never have bought the car without the godiscount. 40-She's a talented dancer and a good singer as well. 41-I haven't seen better service anywhere. (Nowhead to be a company to be a com	(Unless) (Not only) ere else) aces.
43-He'd never seen such a professional performance	(Under no) before.
45- I won't land a (No	before) n to dance. sooner) (On no)

46-It was the first time I had visited London. (Neve	r before)
not necessary to come to work on sundays.	(needn't)
the first time they have seen show.	(Never)
48-11's the most a stricter diet, she won't lose	e weight.
	(unless)
50-I wouldn't have succeeded if my parents hadn't e	encouraged
me.	(But for)
51-Julie can get a puppy only if she promises to take	e care of it.
51-Julie dan 99-1-117	(long)
52-It would be foolish of him not to accept the offer	. (if)
53-If you don't speak clearly, the audience won't un	derstand you.
JJ II You don't be	(or else)
54-Fortunately, they were wearing seat belts, so no	body was
seriously injured.	(unless)
55-I advise you to see the dentist today, otherwise	your
toothache will get worse.	(petter)
56-Suzan doesn't like watching TV in the evenings,	she'd rather
road magazines.	(preidi)
57-We'd prefer to go shopping rather than stay at h	('d rather)
그 나는 그 집에 그렇게 그리고 하고 이 경기가 되었다. 그렇게 되었다는 그리지 않는데 그렇게 되었다. 그리고 하는데 이 사람이 하다.	(62 . 61 61 7
58- I wouldn't mind contacting her but I don't have	(if)
number.	(Help)
59-You are all welcome to have some more cake. 60-The mechanic made a careful inspection of the	car to see what
60-The mechanic made a carcrar map	(inspected)
was wrong with it. 61-Sally regrets not having entered the competition	. (wishes)
61-Sally regrets not having and 62-Can you tell me Nora's address?	(lives)
63-What is the distance from the village to the bea	ch? (How)
64- Jane, what's your favourite colour?	(WIICH)
65- I finished reading the book and then I went to I	oed. (until)
66-I spoke to a very helpful assistant manager last	week. (who)
67-We'll leave any time you're ready. (who	enever)
그는 그 그는 그리고 하는 것이 되었다. 그런 그리고 하는 것이 되었다. 그는 그리고 그리고 그리고 그리고 있다.	

68- We've interviewed all the candidates but	we haven thoung
anyone suitable for the job.	(none)
69-During a walk in the forest, Fady was stu	ing by a bee.
	(while)
70-You know, I felt disappointed but I didn't	give up trying.
	(despite)
71-She is very talented but she doesn't play	the piano
professionally.	(Talented)
72-She was heavily dressed so as not to cate	ch a cold. (fear)
73-Despite the technical problems, the train	
	(Although)
74-The committee has set up a charity to rai	se funds for the
refugees.	(aim)
75-The subway was flooded because it was r	aining heavily in the
city centre.	(due)
76-Magdy was the only person who didn't ag	ree with the
proposal.	(except)
77-He spent all his money on clothes even th	ough his parents had
advised him not to.	(regardless)
78-He really wants to buy a car.	(keen)
79-Do you know that a lot of rice is consume	d in China?
	(Chinese)
80- I'm really disappointed that he didn't win	the race. (pity)
81-You must be experienced in order to get to	he job. (have)
82- Although she acts very well, she has neve	r had a leading role.
92 Hour many authors - 1	(good)
83- How many suitcases do you have?	(How much)
84-Ayman likes playing football more than an	y other game.
QE In come countries II	(favourite)
85-In some countries the ox is used for pullin	g vehicles or
carrying things.	(are)
86-She doesn't know a lot about astronomy.	(knowledge)
87- Al-Moswar is published every week.	(magazine)

88-You need to be fluent in two foreign languages in	order to get
the job.	(speak)
89-None of my colleagues are more hardworking tha	n Nagi.
	(most)
90-Engy's briefcase is similar to yours.	(same)
91-I love eating fruit, mostly peaches.	(particular)
92-You should not only give up smoking but also follows:	ow a
healthier diet.	(addition)
93-The Mayor didn't comment on the new traffic reg	ulations.
(con	cerning)
94-I had to repeat the exam because I failed it. (con	sequently)
95-You know, after painting the flat, it looked new. (been)
96-The children's performance at the concent was ve	ery
impressive.	(audience)
97-Unfortunately, I watched TV the whole afternoon	
manage to finish my homework.	(spent)
98-He spoke so fast that we couldn't understand wha	
saying.	(too)
99-Julie had just arrived when the lights went out. (s	sooner)
100- The waitress told me that the restaurant was	about to
close and I had scarcely started to eat.	
101- Mum, this food is really delicious.	
102- Why did they cancel their trip to Cyprus?	(Was)
103- I haven't experienced worse service anywhere	(Nowhere)
I was more soffee so that he would	
104- He bought some more coffee so that he woul	(case)
at the weekend.	
105- You know, although she was angry, she manage	
calmly.	(spite)
106- Jake bought all the necessary equipment and th	
camping with his friends.	(until)
107- "Who did you go on holiday with, Usama?" aske	2012년 시간 - 교육시간 :
	(gone)

108- She had just left when her mother called. 109- Sarah, what is it that makes you dislike him so 110- The students are anxious to get the results of t	(Hardly) much? (why) the test.
	(forward)
111- Someone stole the man's car and he has gone	,
station.	(The man)
112- We must not allow the fire to spread to the vill	
112 We must not unow the me to opt out to	(prevent)
113- He doesn't know anything about what's going of	
113- He doesn't know anything about what's going t	_
ddd a land it in the land it for the it was for	(unaware)
114- As he studied more, the less difficult it was for	
the math's problems.	(easier)
115- Mr. Smith is the owner of this house.	
116- He was too scared to enter the haunted house.	(bold)
117-Hany finished his homework before the film sta	rted.
(by the	he time)
118- He expected people to have shown him more re	espect.
	(been)
119- She hates people keeping her waiting.	(kept)
120- Someone ought to have told us about this.	(been)
121- They can't stand people criticizing them.	(criticized)
122- Nader regrets not having accepted the job he w	vas offered.
	(wishes)
123- I have packed everything except my camera.	(only)
124- You'll have to walk a mile to get to the station f	
	(walk)
125- He is going on holiday for a month at the end of	of the year.
	(a)
126- I don't mind being alone at weekends.	
127- Let's go to some other place to do our shopping	(own)
128- What do you think of my new shoes?	
129- The local bakery is making their wedding cake.	(opinion)
the real batter, is making their wedding cake.	(are)

130- It wasn't necessary to buy me such an expensiv	e present.
150 20	(bought)
131- I don't feel like going to the cinema tonight. 132- Their car broke down, so they missed the conce	(rather) ert. (if)
133- This is the worst book I have ever heard.	(than)
	(than)
135- He prefers to live alone rather than share a flat.	(his)
136- We can go to the shops any time that suits you.	
	never)
137- "Why don't we invite Laila for dinner?" he said ((inviting)
138- I'm sure the decision was difficult to accept.	(been)
139- We bought more food than we really needed. (I	have)
	(spent)
141- The person found guilty of murder was sent to	prison.
	(who)
142- The hotel in which we spent our summer holida	y has been
closed down.	(where)
143- I'm sure he wasn't serious when he said he'd re	esign. (can't)
144- Sillion has done very hear have	(hardly)
145- "Honestly I didn't steal the chocolate." The boy	said (stabling)
	. (stealing)
146- In spite of the restaurant being expensive, the	though)
terrible.	though) (as)
147- It sounds easy but it's really rather difficult.	
148- She was tired. She felt like she had run a mile,	(as if)
hadn't actually. 149- He isn't a millionaire. He spends a lot of money	
	nough)
150- I'm sure it wasn't Suzan that broke the vase. (
151- The lady in the pink dress is my aunt.	
152- We stopped at the service station otherwise, w	
run out of petrol.	(if)
an out or potion	(11)

153- Tim couldn't have found that treasure without the map.	
(unless)	
154- It's a pity I didn't read that book. (wish)	
155- Engy would have lent you the money but you didn't ask h	lei
(asked)	
156- She wasn't old enough, or experienced enough to get the	!
job. (Neither	•)
157- Helen regretted selling her grandfather's house. (wished)
158- Women are said to be safer drivers than men. (drive)	
159- John is in the habit of getting up early everyday. (used)	
160- We haven't told anyone about our decision yet. (No one)	
161- A plumber is repairing my dishwasher this afternoon.	
(repaired)	
162- Adel hasn't visited the dentist since last year. (checked)	
163- The moment she reached the staircase, she hears a strang	
noise. (just after	
164- I didn't have much money left, so I didn't buy any souveni	
(hardly)	
165- You are always blaming me for things that go wrong.	
(Whenever anything)	
166- You don't do any exercise and that's why you put on weigh	nt
(if) 167- It's true that John doesn't appreciate good music and nor	
door Hady	
160 I hope you have for all !	
169- Thope you have fun at the party. (yourself) 169- They returned home. They realized that their house had	
heen huraled	
170- Julie opened the door. The bird flew out of the cage.	
(hardly)	
171- He didn't have any qualifications, and as a result, he didn't	
get job. (because	_
172- It wasn't necessary for Iman to do the ironing, but she did	
(have)	

173- It wasn't necessary for me to go to work but I 174- If you go near the house, the dog will chase you 175- I don't think it's a good idea to go to the party 176- I want to go on holiday but I haven't got enough	ou. (else) . (were)
	(wish)
177- You shouldn't borrow any money you won't be	able to pay it
back.	(better)
178- Magda read the paper during breakfast.	(while)
179- It isn't necessary for you to write the instruction	
1/9- It isn't necessary for you to write the module	(have)
180- Edfu is the city he lived in until he was 18.	(where)
181- Talking during the exam is not allowed.	(No one)
182- I want to go to Samir's party, but I'm too ill.	(wish)
183- Fady has got the same number of CDs as Nagi	Property and the first of the second
184- Could you give me a lift to the office, please? (mind)
185- She had difficulty reading his handwriting.	(difficult)
186- It was the first time she had driven a car.	(never)
186- It was the first time she had arrent a bout her 187- Salwa doesn't like people to ask her about her	work. (be)
187- Salwa doesn't like people to donner on Friday?"	they said to
그 그는 그 그 그 그 그 그는 것 같아 하는 것도 하고 있다. 이 교육이 되는 사람들이 되었다. 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그 그	(invited)
us. 189- "I've got the fastest car of all my friends." Dan	iel said.
189- "Tve got the rastest car of all "	(boasted)
190-Don't open the door on any account while I'm	out.
(OII)	io decountry
191- I had never seen such a fierce dog before. (Ne	ever before)
102 It rained heavily all day, so they didn't go out.	(DULTOI)
193- Mary regrets not studying hard for her exams.	(wishes)
194- If you don't stop being naughty, I will tell the	neadmaster.
194 If you don't been 5	(else)
195- "What a fantastic view!" they said. (excla	aimed)
196- The only one he didn't send invitation to was N	ladia.
(ever	yone)
그리다 그 그는 말이 얼마로 마다는 걸린다고요. 그리고 오다 전에 맛있으로 바라 요하다.	

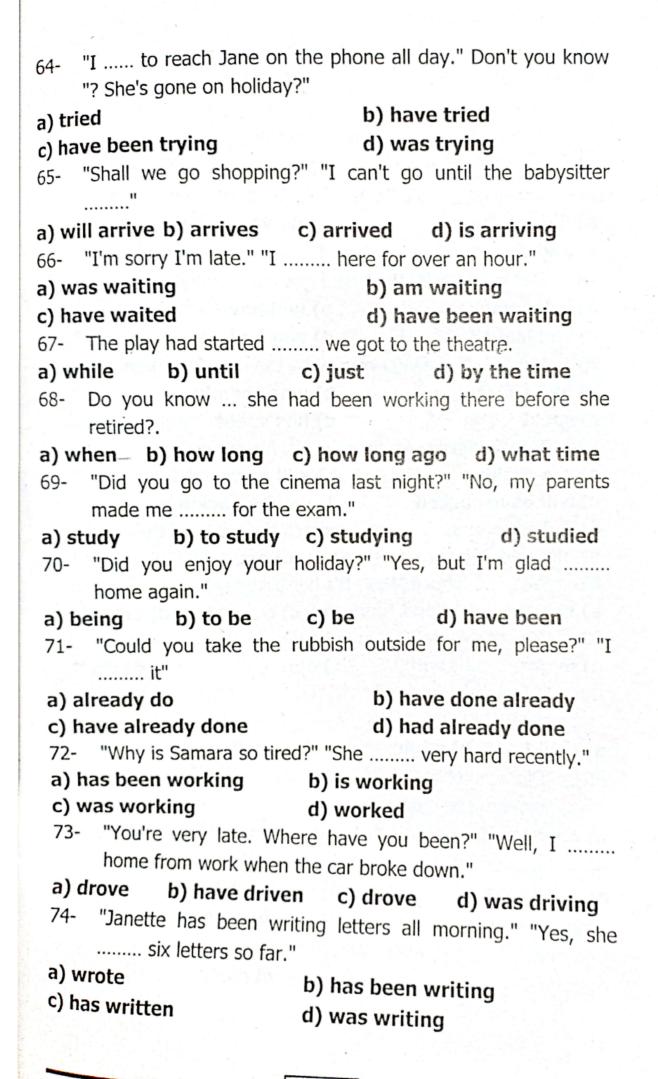
It takes me an hour to de	rive from my house to the airport,
13/- It takes me ar	(It is)
as Albayan't soon such beau	itiful mountains anywhere else.
198- I naven t seen such beach	(Nowhere)
and at t	ho party " Said Alia (hoastad)
199- "I'm the prettiest girl at t	the party." Said Alia. (boasted)
200- Taking photographs insid	le the museum is strictly prohibited. (not)
Choose the correct answer	worse these days
1- The problem of pollution	c) is getting d) was getting
a) will get b) got	gio sat down to rest
2 the housework. Mag	b) Having done
a) Doing c) Done	d) Has done
3 some spare time, To	
a) Having b) Have	
4- It's no use the door.	
	c) to push d) to pushing
5- We expect everyone	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	c) to coming d) coming
6- She was lying on the sofa	about the exam.
a) think b) to think	c) to thinking d) thinking
7- This time next month. I	in a new house.
a) will live	b) will be living
c) and niving	d) will have lived
8- The match at two o'd	clock tomorrow afternoon.
9- Julie is starting a partial of	c) is starting d) starting
Julie is starting a new job t	Omorrow Sho famound to the
10- They were happy to have	c) look d) is looking
THE HUDDY TO THE	I IDAV
11- The boys avoided a) to walk b) walking	ing c) have won d) win
, and a substitution of the substitution of th	
12- Look at the sunshine, it	c) walk d) to walking
a) is being b) is going to	he as he
2 2 119 (0	be c) be d) being

13- "Where have you been? I hav	en't seen you for a while" "Oh,
	h) have been and the
a) am working	, and a death it driking
c) was working	,
14- "Did you watch the late film	on TV last night?" "Yes, but I
it twice before."	
a) already saw c) was seeing already	b) was already seeing
c) was seeing aiready	d) had already seen
15- Jane works very hard K	
a) whereas b) despite c) th	
16 I you, I would look for a	
a) Would b) Were c) SI	
17- "Suppose you some me	
it?" "I'd probably go on holida	그리고 있는 경기 경우는 사람들이 되었다면 하는 것이 되었다.
a) win b) will win c) w	그 그 집은 얼마 그렇게 된 하나 이 생생이었다. 그 하나
18- "Can I go out tonight, mum?"	"I'd rather you at home
and did your homework."	
a) will stay b) stayed c) st	
19- "I've just passed my driving t	est. "Congratulations. I wish I
a car."	s) drive d) could drive
a) will drive b) can drive 20- We get up early this r	morning so we slept until ten
o'clock.	norming, so we slept until ten
a) needn't b) didn't need to	c) mustn't d) couldn't
21 it was raining, he took	
a) Due to b) Because of	
22 ill, Samia didn't go to wor	
a) Feeling b) Feel c) To	
23 you give me a lift to the s	
a) Ought b) Should c) W	ould d) Do
24- We had started the jour	ney than we got a flat tyre.
a) the moment that	b) no sooner
c) whenever	d) hardly
25- Who in my desk? Things	s have been moved.
a) look	b) looks
c) looking	d) has been looking
26- I remember the time I fo	ell and broke my log
a) where b) when c) wh	nich d) why
	~, · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

ho is hanny is	that he has just passed by
27- The reasonhe is happy is	3 Passed NIS
exams.	c) that d) why
a) where b) when	ht?" "No. by the time I
28- "Did you make dinner last ring	grice 1197 by the time I got
home. Mary it?"	b) already made
a) had already made	
c) has already made	d) already has made
29- I'll take my umbrella it ra	ins later today.
a) so that b) in case c) in c	order to a) que to
30- The office I work is very	large.
a) which b) what c) who	ere a) when
31- They for an hour now, so	they're tired.
a) exercise b) have	e been exercising
c) are exercising d) we	re exercising
32- This time next week I on	a sandy beach.
a) will be lying b) wil	
c) am lying d) wil	I have lied
33- We the lock fixed before	we went on holiday.
a) have had b) are	having
c) had had d) wil	
34- The girl at that desk is m	y best friend.
a) sits b) to sit	c) sat d) sitting
35- That's the boy father is m	ny teacher.
a) whose b) who's	c) who d) that
30- I think I my hair cut next	Saturday
a) have b) have had	c) will have d) had
Where is Dad?" "He's in the	garden some apples
nom the tree.	
a) pick b) picking 38- "They have finished by the	c) to pick d) picked
mey have missing pilliding th	no nove the state of the out of
of the mayor hear month	. 11
a) is opened b) opened c) will	be opened d) is being
THE THE PERSON AND TH	jame yesterday." "Well done,"
a) can b) could c) wor	uld d) was able to

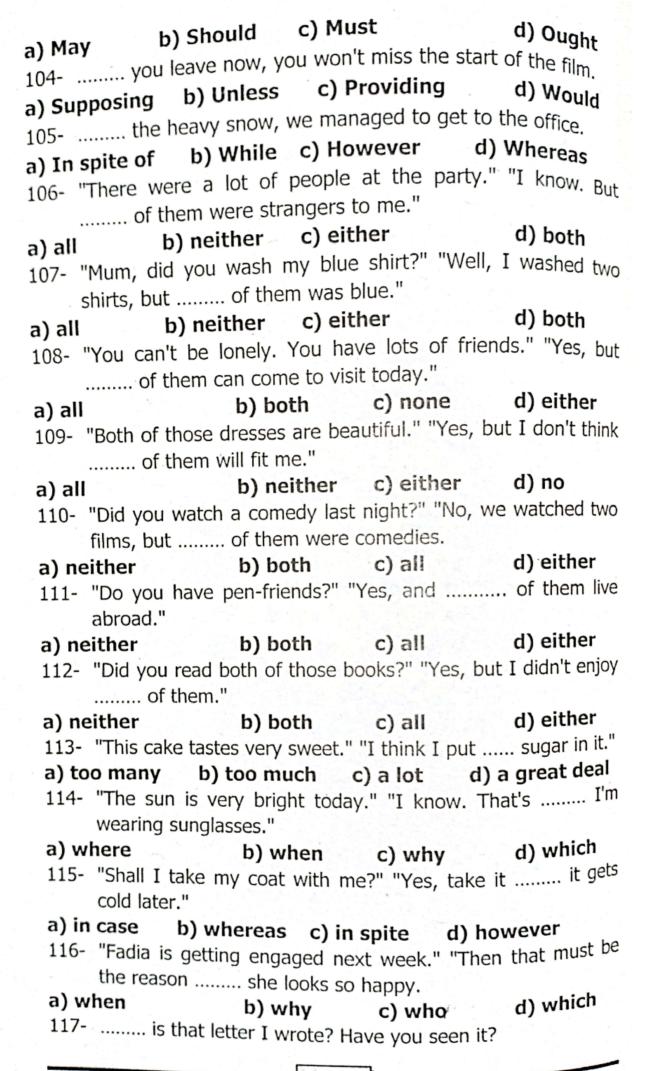
40-	"Have you found your keys yet?" "No, I've look	ed but
	I can't find them.	
a) ev	verywhere b) everything	
Δ1-	"The children must have been hungry I kno	ow. They ate
	on their plates."	
a) e)	computers to everything c) anything d) so	omething
42-	"Why didn't you go to the party?" "Because	of my
	triands was invited "	
	b) both c) either	d) no
a) no	"Have you got any brothers?" "I've got two	of them
	aldor than ma"	
	b) Both C) All	d) None
a) E	"Mum, did you make a chocolate cake today?"	"Well, I made
	of thom was thuculated	
	ither b) all c) both	d) neither
a) e	ither b) all b) shildren were already as	leep.
45-	ither b) an ey both were already as I got home, the children were already as by the time b) Until c) By d) to be the children were already as by the time b) Until c) By d) to be the children were already as	Whenever
a) B	"I cut my hair myself." "Really? How brave	! I by a
46-	"I cut my hair myself. Really! How	
	hairdresser."	
a) c	cut mine d) mine is cut	
c) a	m cutting mine d) mine is cut the fire place	ce.
47-	Hang the picture on the wall the fire place	d) at
a) a	Hang the picture on the wall	
a)	How often d) How heavy	
c) l	How many	
49-	John fell his bicycle and hurt his knees.	d) off
-1	down b) around	
	in this give:	
a)	quite a clean	
	il a daice of	now.
	- ALACE I THINK II 3 UUIIIU to oi	coldest and
- \	and and colder and	
52-	he were my mend, but he ish to	
a)	as though b) though c) as	d) like
۵,		

53- "Did you watch the film time we got home."	n yesterday?" "No, it by the
a) finished	h) has finished
c) was finishing	d) had finished
C) was infishing	w descrit sho?" "Vos she
have long dark hair, didr	w, doesn't she?" "Yes, she to n't she?"
a) is used b) used	c) is using d) is used to
	to walking long distances."
	c) am used to d) am using
	her job at first." "Yes, she to
working on her own."	
	c) was used d) wasn't used
	"Because I to getting up early
in the morning."	
	ed c) didn't use d) used
	ee course difficult?" "Yes, but I soon
to it."	
a) got used b) used	c) was used d) be used
59- She hadn't finished	the washing up when the guests
arrived.	
a) yet b) just	c) before d) still
60- I fell asleep I clos	ed my eyes.
a) just b) as soon as	c) already d) still
61- "I haven't seen Mark f	or weeks." "Well, I him this
arternoon why don't yo	ou come along?
a) have met	b) am meeting
c) shall have met	d) meet
62- "Laila doesn't study end	ough." "I know. I'm afraid she
Her exam.	
a) won't pass	b) won't be passing
c) won't have passed	d) isn't passing
vynose is this earring?	" "I don't know. I found it when I
cric riouse.	
a) have cleaned c) was cleaning	b) had cleaned
o, was cleaning	d) cleaned



curan leave h	ome?
75 did Suzan leave h	b) How long ago
a) How long	d) How many
c) How much	ers to skirts.
c) How much 76- She prefers trouse	c) to wear d) to wearing "Since we were children."
a) wearing b) wear 77- "How long Tony?"	"Since we were children."
77- "How long Torry:	b) do you know
a) did you know	
c) had you known	a I get home tonight.
78- Nahed by the time	b) will have left
a) is leaving	d) will be leaving
c) will leave	by the time the shops closed
79- Hanaa all her mor	ney by the time the shops closed. b) was spending
a) had spent	d) has spent
c) spent	for our holiday
80- This time next month w	b) will pack
a) are packing	b) Will be packing
c) will have packed	a) Will be packing
81- No reporters to an	oproach the scene of the accident.
a) allowed b) were allow	ved c) needn't d) didn't have
82- We phone Mary. I	to a sught to d) are able to
	to c) ought to d) are able to
	not sure. He be in the study."
	c) ought d) shall
last night."	" "You have stayed up so late
a) could b) might	c) shouldn't d) won't
	esterday?" "No, I, he came
round to see me."	
a) needn't b) didn't nee	d to c) shouldn't d) mustn't
86- No information to	the new staff yet.
a) has given	b) has been given
c) was given	d) was being given
87- Hebe at work. His	car isn't outside his house.
a) might b) will	c) can't d) must
	물건으로 아니다 점에 먹는 그런 아들는 그 그들에 생겼다며 돌아왔다는데 그리고 있다.

88- We go shopping yesterday because we had plenty of
food.
a) needn't have b) need to
c) didn't need to d) don't need to
89- Could you get me two of bread from the bakery?
a) loaves b) packets c) kilos d) pieces
90- Two months a long time to wait for a reply.
a) are b) is c) were d) have been
91 day, I will buy a big house with a garden.
a) A b) The c) That d) One
92- " we miss the bus, what will we do?" "Call a taxi."
a) Supposing b) Providing c) When d) Unless
93- " you hurry, you will be late for work ." "I'm nearly
ready now."
a) Supposing b) Providing c) When d) Unless
94- Hassan apologized shouting at me.
a) at b) in c) for d) about
95- If you your room, you can go out to play.
a) have tided b) tided c) had tided d) are tiding
of If I feel better tonight, I to the party.
a) would go b) go c) went d) might go
That office block is much than this one.
a) taller b) tall c) tallest d) being tall
98- They had lots of potatoes, so they buy any more.
a) mustn't b) couldn't c) wouldn't d) didn't need to
99 the bank is closed, what will we do?
a) Unless b) Though c) Supposing d) Providing
100- If you in such a hurry, you wouldn't have forgotten
the file.
a) hadn't left b) had left c) have left d) having left
101- He denied his mother's vase.
a) to break b) broke c) have broken d) breaking
102- They be friends. They never speak to each other.
a) would b) could c) can't d) mustn't
103 I take your order now, madam?



a) Which b) When c) What d) Where 118- When we lived by the sea; we ... to swim every morning.
a) were used b) used c) were usingd) got used 119- We waved goodbye the car was out of sight.
a) while b) when c) until d) by the time 120- "I love going to the beach." "......."
a) So do I b) So I do c) Neither do I d) Nor I do.

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Infinitive o		Past	Past Participle
أو المصدر		الماضي	التصريف الثالث
		arose	arisen
arise		awoke	awoke
awake		bore	born
bear .			borne
bear	يحمل - يتحمل		beaten
beat	يضرب – يهزم		
become	يصبح - يصير	The second secon	become
bend	یلوی – یثنی		bent
begin		began	begun
bet	يراهن	bet	bet
bid	يأمر - يقول	bade	bidden
bind	يربط	bound	bound
bite	يعض	bit	bitten
bleed	يدمى - ينزف	bled	bled
blow	يهب - ينفخ	blew	blown
break	يكسر	broke	broken
breed	یربی	bred	bred
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
broadcast	يذيع	broadcast	broadcast
build	يبنى	built	built
burn	يحترق - يحرق	burnt-burned	burnt-burned
burst	ينقجر	burst	burst
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
catch	يمسك – يصطاد	caught	caught
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
cling	يتعلق	clung	clung
come	يأتي - يحضر	came	come
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
creep	يزحف	crept	crept
deal	. 80	dealt	deait

dig	يحفر ۽	dug	dug
do	يفعل	did	done
draw	يرسم-يجر -يسحب	drew	drawn
dream		dreamt, dreamed	dreamt ,dreamed
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
drive	يقود – يجر	drove	driven
dwell	يسكن – يقطن	dwelt	dwelt
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
fall	يسقط - يقع	fell	fallen
feed	يطعم – يغذى	fed	fed
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
fortell	يتنبا	fortold	fortold
fight	يحارب	fought	fought
find	بجد	found	found
flee	پهرب	fled	fed
fling	رمى أو يقذف بقوة	flung	flung
fly		flew	flown
forbid	منع	forbade	forbidden
forget	نسى	forgot	forgotten
forgive	سامح - يعفو عن	forgave	forgiven
freeze	تجمد	froze	frozen
get	حصل على	got	got
give	عطى	gave	given
go	ذهب	went	gone
grind	طحن	ground	ground
grow	زرع – ينمو	grew	grown
hang	علق	hung	hung
have	ملك	had	had
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
hide	يخبئ – يختبئ	hid	hidden
hit	يضرب يصطده يرتطم		hit
hold		held	held

hunt
hurt
kept
knelt
known
laid
led
leapt
arned learnt-learned
left
lent
let
lain
lied
t lighted-lit
lost
made
meant
met
mistaken
stood misunderstood
outrun
overcome
w overthrown
put
read
ridden
rung
risen
run
said
seen
sought
sold

send	يرسل	sent	sent
set	يبدأ - يضع	set	set
sew	يحيك - يخيط	sewed	sewn
shake	يهتز – يهز	shook	shaken
shed	يذرف - يسفك	shed	shed
shine	يلمع يضئ	shone	shone
shoot	يطلق – يقذف	shot	shot
show	یری – یبین	showed	shown
shrink	ينكمش – يتقلص	shrank	shrunk
shut	يغلق	shut	shut
sing	يغنى	sang	sung
sink	يغوص - يغرق	sank	sunk
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
slay	يذبح - يقتل	slew	slain
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
slide	ينزلق	slid	slid
smell	يشم	smelt	smelt
sow		sowed	sown
speak		spoke	spoken
spell		spelt	spelt
spend	ينفق - يقضى		spent
spill		Spilled	Spilled
spin		Span	Spun
split		Split	Split
spoil		spoilt	Spoilt
spread		spread	Spread
spring		sprang	Sprung
stand		stood	Stood
steal		stole	Stolen
stick	يلصق	stuck	Stuck
sting	يلدغ	stung	Stung
stride	يخطو	Strode	Stridden
strike	يضرب - يخبط	Struck	struck

	يقسم	Swore	sworn
swear	يكنس - يكتميح		swept
sweep	يتورم	Swelled	swollen
swell		Swam	swum
swim	يتأرجح - يتمايل		swung
swing		Took	taken
take		Taught	taught
teach		Tore	torn
tear	The second secon	Told	told
tell			thrown
throw	يرمى - يقذف		thought
think		Thought	thrust
thrust		Thrust	trodden
tread	يطأ - يدوس	Underwent	undergone
undergo	يمر بـ – يجتاز	Underwent	understood
understand		Understood	undertaken
undertake		Undertook	waked-woken
wake		Woke-waked	
wear	يلبس - يرتدى		worn
weave		Wove	woven
weep		Wept	wept
win	يكسب - يربح	Won	won
wind	يلف - يربط	Wound	sound
withdraw	ينسحب	Withdrew	withdrawn
withstand	يتحمل	Withstood	withstood
wring	يعصر	Wrung	wrung
write	بكتب	Wrote	Written

Ex. 80 Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly.

- 1. I had a three weeks holiday in Spain.
- My boss has been to Alexandria and I'm doing some of his works.
- Nadia was lying in the sun before the children were playing in the pool.
- 4. How long did you pass your test?
- 5. I was walking down the street while a car stopped beside me.
- 6. He continued his journey before he changed the tyre.
- 7. Our team had scored three goals until we got to the match.
- 8. The professor didn't start speaking since everyone was quiet.
- 9. She had been singing for years just she finally became a star.
- 10. Do you know where he lived in Alexandria before he moved to Cairo?
- They have been sailing for a month before they reached the port.
- 12. She took off her coat by the time she entered the house.
- 13. She was upset because she was waiting to hear from her son for days.
- 14. She has finished most of the work by the time her boss arrived.
- 15. She was pleased because she gave the job.
- 16. We were living in the same house for twelve years before we decided to move.
- 17. He left his job because he was feeling dissatisfied for months.
- 18. She isn't used to live in tropical climates.
- 19. The bus to Alexandria departs for an hour.
- 20. I really need a drink. I'll buy you one. What would you like?
- 21. I'm sure he is going to understand if you explain it to him clearly.
- 22. If I will have enough money, I'll buy you a new bicycle.
- 23. Last week I met Paul and he told me that Mary was moving to Canada two weeks before.
- 24. I'll leave before he is coming.
- 25. I' ve known him just we were at school.
- 26. She was working in Alexandria for two years before she applied for a new post.
- 27. She had just dressed before Nagi arrived.

- 28. Nadia has been studying English since three months.
- 29. She met her husband ten years already.
- 30. I yet haven't read this book.
- 31. How long did they move into their new house?
- 32. She's the cleverest person I ever met.
- 33. Janet didn't go to the dentist for six years.
- 34. I can't remember which I last saw a comic film.
- 35. He can't stand treated like a slave.
- 36. She came in only finding Fady had left.
- 37. They made him to pay for the damage.
- 38. Let me the first congratulating you on your success.
- 39. I prefer reading a book than watching T.V.
- 40. I prefer to read book rather to watch T.V.
- 41. If you don't stop to smoke, you'll make yourself ill.
- 42. We are waiting for his first novel published in England.
- 43. Don't tease him anymore. He doesn't enjoy to be laughed at.
- 44. Listen carefully because I don't want to misunderstand.
- 45. She wasn't too inexperienced to get the job.
- 46. The horror film was terrified.
- 47. Dad didn't let me to drive his car.
- 48. He found it difficult enough to do the crossword.
- 49. The secretary was complaining for have too much work.
- 50. If the swimmer was able to find his way out of the jungle, he would have survived.
- 51. Today is a holiday. You can't go to work.
- 52. You didn't have to worry about the problem anymore I'll take care of it.
- 54. You don't need to say that. She was very upset by your remark.
- 55. Perhaps he left the car unlocked. He will have left the car unlocked.
- 56. You might drive slowly. This is my advice.
- 57. It would be a good idea to leave early. You would better leave early.
- 58. It wasn't necessary for them to pay for our meal. They couldn't have paid for our meal.
- 59. He said he was sorry he was late. He apologized to be late.
- 60. I don't feel well but I'll carry out working any way.

- 61. Nagi is not good about playing football. He'd rather play squash.
- 62. When he was full recovered from his illness, the doctor told him to take it easy.
- 63. Although he arrived an hour late, he tried hardly to make up for the last time.
- 64. His hands were too cold as ice.
- 65. The soon you start, the sooner you'll finish.
- 66. The richer you are, the many friends you have.
- 67. The plane flew highly in the sky.
- 68. The smaller the flat is, the law the rent is.
- 69. You drive fast, the quicker we'll get there.
- 70. This energy saving machine is more economical model on the market.
- 71. The police was following the thief everywhere.
- 72. This new energy saving machine uses the least electricity than the others.
- 73. The news were announced on the television screen.
- 74. I've never seen so boring film.
- 75. She's the quicker typist of all.
- 76. That table is alike to this one.
- 77. Nagi has got as much books as Hany.
- 78. This ring is far much valuable than that ring.
- 79. It's possible we'll stay for another night. We should stay for another night.
- 80. My grandfather died with cancer.
- 81. This holiday was different of all the others.
- 82. There's a big difference from English and Greek food.
- 83. She attended a three- years course.
- 84. You must cut off the amount of sugar you consume.
- 85. The village was cut down for days because of the snow.
- 86. Every year, one out in five children in Britain is injured in an accident.
- 87. He tries hard to keep up with the class. He makes his good to keep up with the class.
- 88. It takes two hours to fly from Athens to Rome. It's trip takes two hours from Athens to Rome.

- 89. He is the little helpful policeman I'v ever met .
- 90. Jane would prefer to work as a doctor from working as a nurse.
- 91. Smoking in trains is not allowed. You needn't smoke in trains.
- 92. Shall we go to the party tonight? What for going to the party tonight?
- 93. They started restoring the monument a year ago. They were restoring the monument for a year.
- 94. The hospital which I was born is being extended.
- 95. If I have been you I'd get some legal advice.
- 96. Despite of her severe disability, she fulfilled her goal in life.
- 97. Engy used to be the happier than she is now.
- 98. He explained to us the more best ways of self-defence.
- 99. Until I arrived home, Samy had already left.
- 100. We waited for six hours until the train got to the station.
- 101. Ann didn't buy the car since she had saved enough money.
- 102. He watered the plants by the time she got home.
- 103. As soon as I'll get home. I'll have something to eat.
- 104. When the Queen will arrive, we must stand up.
- 105. We waited for you by the time it got dark.
- 106. I'll call you immediately I reach my hotel.
- 107. The children cleared the table by the time they had finished eating.
- 108. I helped him so as he could finish early.
- 109. He opened an account so that save money to buy a car.
- 110. I'll take some sandwiches in case I'll get hungry.
- 111. He doesn't carry a lot of cash in order that avoid getting robbed.
- 112. She put on her raincoat lest get wet.
- 113. The little boy hid for fear to be punished.
- 114. There's too a lot of noise that I can't work.
- 115. It was such a nice weather that we went to the park.
- 116. It was such nice a day that we went to the beach.
- 117. He didn't work hard for he lost his work.
- 118. The road was blocked as a result there has been an accident.

- 119. For it's raining out side, let's take a taxi.
- 120. Because the traffic I arrived at the office late.
- 121. Samy is so short to join the police force.
- 122. He worked extremely hard that he got a promotion.
- 123. Despite of being rich, they aren't happy.
- 124. He is tall while his sister is short.
- 125. Although he studied hard but he failed the exam.
- 126. What he said, she was convinced.
- 127. In spite the rain, the game was not off.
- 128. While she going on a diet, she put on five kilos.
- 129. In spite of you say. I won't believe you.
- 130. Whatever hard he studies, he doesn't get good marks.
- 131. His mother is French even though his father English.
- 132. Expensive however the restaurant, the food tasted terrible.
- 133. They travelled at night in the hope to be seen.
- 134. The students which failed the exam can sit again in May.
- 135. My uncle has a large collection of antiques, many of whom are valuable.
- 136. The supermarket has thirty employees, most of which work part time.
- 137. She is friendly with the two children whose their mother is the headmistress.
- 138. Mr. Collins is the man from which I bought my tape recorder.
- 139. The building which I work caught fire yesterday.
- 140. Neither Nadia or Fadia knows how to drive.
- 141. The travel agency will contact you so that your flight is changed.
- 142. The hotel which we spent our summer holidays, has been closed down.
- 143. I not only enjoy my job and it's very well paid.
- 144. The plane couldn't take off because the thick fog.
- 145. She won't buy him any chocolate if he stops crying.
- 146. Mr Smith is keen at photography.
- 147. The accident victim had to be operated about immediately.
- 148. The flat wasn't cleaned yet.
- 149. The politician is interviewed now.

- 150. Tea was grown in India.
- 151. The prizes will award to the President tomorrow.
- 152. The prisoner were being taken to prison now.
- 153. These should take before meals.
- 154. There was hard any food left.
- 155. It is very more expensive to live in London than any other city in Britain.
- 156. He is good at write stories to children.
- 157. I love given flowers.
- 158. They can't stand be criticized.
- 159. She hates being keep waiting.
- 160. She likes complementing on her work.
- 161. A cure for the disease hoped efficient.
- 162. The hostage believed to have died.
- 163. He said to be a dishonest man.
- 164. The hotel was fully booked, when we stayed at a guest house.
- 165. He plays football as if he is a professional best yet he is not professional.
- 166. She is jealous at her well-off sister in law.
- 167. Has someone repaired the telephone. I've just used it so it must have repaired.
- 168. The firemen looked tired. They tried to put out the fire for six hours.
- 169. When we arrived at the airport, the plane already taken off.
- 170. After the policeman questioned the suspect, he let him go.
- 171. Patients must give medicine every morning.
- 172. The drowning child was risking by the life guard yesterday.
- 173. Our water heater is repaired at the moment.
- 174. The explosion had caused by a gas leak.
- 175. The tax on cigarettes have been increased.
- 176. The rooms were cleaned daily.
- 177. The actress will protect by a bodyguard 24 hours a day.
- 178. The award be presented by an eminent scientist now.
- 179. Surgeons make operations on people in hospitals.
- 180. My brother has a difficult decision to do next week.
- 181. Everyone does mistakes when they learning something new.

- 182. If you take this medicine, it will do you good.
- 183. I have much work to make.
- 184. Trained dogs are using by the police to find drugs.
- 185. Eating too much chocolate makes me feeling sick.
- 186. I have cut my hair last week.
- 187. Nagi is having his house decorating at the moment.
- 188. The manager asked having a room booked to him.
- 189. Jim hates to have his mistakes correct.
- 190. He used have his meals cooked.
- 191. He told the maid to have served his breakfast in his room.
- 192. Now I wear contact lenses I had tested my eyes every three months.
- 193. All the arrangements should have made for the business meeting.
- 194. Maged got two of his teeth extracting yesterday.
- 195. This diet says to be rich in vitamins.
- 196. It thought that most of the society's problems are the result of unemployment.
- 197. The bus driver made the noisy passenger got off the bus.
- 198. He tried to give away smoking twice.
- 199. I was asked to hold out white Mr. Smith was fetched to the phone.
- 200. We were held back on the motorway for three hours.
- 201. Thick fog prevented the plane of taking off.
- 202. There was no reason on his reckless actions.
- 203. This man reminds me about my uncle.
- 204. He stood up and walked forward the front door.
- 205. I'm happy at the job I've got.
- 206. There was a lot of traffic because a car had broken up in the middle of the road.
- 207. There's a strong relation about smoking and lung cancer.
- 208. Hard work thinks to be the key to success in life
- 209. He can't lying when he told us the news.
- 210. I'll be able to book tickets so long as you let me know in time.
- 211. Despite of his lack of experience, he always puts forward good ideas.
- 212. The teacher doesn't put up bad behaviour in the classroom.
- 213. What for spending the day on the beach?

- 214. Neither John nor Tom doesn't like staying up late.
- 215. I can only help if you say me problem.
- 216. He asked me what was I doing.
- 217. I want to know if we were going out tonight.
- 218. She told him put the box over there.
- 219. He asked his wife if she has paid the electricity bill.
- 220. Nadia said that he has never written to her before.
- 221. My mother advised me don't stay up too late.
- 222. He accused me for acting as if I were guilty.
- 223. He insisted to me wearing that jacket.
- 224. He advised me that to go to the doctor.
- 225. The manager denied having to steal the money.
- 226. She accused him to cause a lot of pain to her family.
- 227. By who was the mistake made?
- 228. When will the meeting hold?
- 229. He asked me where was I going?
- 230. They suggested to see the film.
- 231. I wonder why did he lie to me.
- 232. The suspect denied to murder the young man.
- 233. They accused him to commit the crime.
- 234. I'll give you a call if I needed any informations.
- 235. Mary had a nanny to look over her kids.
- 236. Look at the unknown words in the dictionary.
- 237. The judge sympathized at the suspect situation.
- 238. Have you never been to New York?
- 239. She watched a film on T.V. When the telephone rang.
- 240. While she went to answer the phone, she slipped on some water.
- 241. If I were invited to the party, I'd have gone.
- 242. If I am a bird. I'd fly.
- 243. If you reserve a ticket, you will not find a seat.
- 244. You will get a seat if that you reserve a ticket.
- 245. Has he known the facts, he'd have told us.
- 246. But for the neighbours stop shouting, I'll call the police
- 247. If he not pay the fine, he may go to prison.
- 248. If he had known about the meeting, he will have come.

- 249. If only I am a millionaire.
- 250. She can't type, but she wishes she can.
- 251. I'm so desperate. I wish I don't move to this house.
- 252. I didn't see the programme, I wish I saw it.
- 253. I wish he will drive more carefully but I don't think he will.
- 254. If you do some exercise, you couldn't lose weight.
- 255. I prefer to stay at home rather than to go out.
- 256. Everyone will win a prize if that they finish the game.
- 257. Your father won't object to your going to the party unless you're back by 9 o'clock.
- 258. In case that you follow the map, you won't get lost.
- 259. She must have made out that story, it can't be true.
- 260. He bought her flowers to make for his bad behaviour.
- 261. It was so a cold weather that we couldn't go out.
- 262. Noone really knows why don't so many people like number 13.
- 263. He arrives too punctually. You can set your watch by him.
- 264. She wouldn't forgive him even though all his apologies.
- 265. Although the lack of money, he seems happy.
- 266. It was unwise of him to believe the weather forecast. He should believe the weather forecast.
- 267. It said that this juice has a high sugar content.
- 268. Excessive sunbathing believes to cause skin cancer.
- 269. Your jeans is hanging on the wardrobe.
- 270. The information were incorrect.
- 271. Physics are the study of natural laws.
- 272. It isn't necessary to wait for us. You can't wait for us.
- 273. You not need buy any meat. We have got plenty.
- 274. We usually go to swim in the weekends.
- 275. It's only six o'clock. It's very early to go to bed.
- 276. He wasn't too tall to reach the cupboard.
- 277. I'm thirsty. I was running for two hours.
- 278. This is the park which I take my do every morning.
- 279. My husband painted our house all himself.
- 280. Peter was driving for an hour before he had an accident.
- 281. Tom worked as a postman for forty years before he retired.

- 282. Have you been sleeping for long when I called you last night ? Yes I had.
- 283. They were tired. They have been discussing business problems for four hours.
- 284. That's the girl which dog bit me last week.
- 285. Medhat was buying a luxury car recently.
- 286. I used reading fairy tales when I was a child.
- 287. My father left before I got up.
- 288. My brother learnt to drive since he was 18.
- 289. My brother has learnt to drive a year ago.
- 290. When I want to relax. I'd rather to read a book.
- 291. My brother is really happy, he just won the school maths prize.
- 292. I find it difficult to get decisions easily.
- 293. My uncle doesn't enjoy to drive in big cities.
- 294. It's not good to have fun of people because of the way they speak.
- 295. You have to study for a long time where you want to train to be a doctor.
- 296. They arranged to go to Mexico. They'd leave tomorrow.
- 297. He decided to change his flat. He'll move to the city centre.
- 298. Mary is never being late for meetings.
- 299. I was never to Austria but I'd love to go.
- 300. How long were you in London? I've been there since last week.
- 301. Fred was falling off the ladder while he was painting the cieling.
- 302. Salah was writing three letters so far today.
- 303. Nadia will buy a car as soon as she will pass her driving test.
- 304.I see black clouds in the sky. It will rain.
- 305. The wind is getting stronger. There will be a sandstorm.
- 306. Football players pass the ball to each other until one player can win a goal.
- 307. I hear you're starting your university course. I'm sure you are going to enjoy it.
- 308. For animals and humans co-operated is important for survival.
- 309. My predict is that you will be a successful doctor.

- 310. Her intend is to pass all her exams next year.
- 311. The patient was saved by a pack of doctors.
- 312. My uncle is always optimistic and thinks something bad is going to happen.
- 313. My brother is always pessimistic and expects to win a gold medal.
- 314. My brother works for insurance company in Cairo.
- 315. Did Nadia get a job she applied for?
- 316. Can you turn out light, Please?
- 317. She works six hours the day.
- 318. There no chairs, so we had to sit on a floor.
- 319. I'm sorry. I didn't mean to do that. It was mistake.
- 320. That's least interesting book I've ever read.
- 321. The most tall building in our city is Cairo Tower.
- 322. English is more easy to learn than Chinese.
- 323. Nagi is the more intelligent student in our class.
- 324. The Pacific Ocean is not too deep as the Indian Ocean.
- 325. For many people climbing a great mountain is life style ambition.
- 326. When someone climbs a mountain, they have recognised one's goal.
- 327. The air is more thinner at the top of Everest.
- 328. We expected their house to be very big but it is no big than ours.
- 329. The young you are, the easier it's to learn.
- 330. It's difficult to concentrate when you are tired. The more tired you are, the hard you concentrate.
- 331. Their house is about three times as bigger as ours.
- 332. That film was really boring. It was more boring film I've ever seen.
- 333. This hotel is not expensive. It is the less expensive hotel I've ever stayed in.
- 334. My brother went to Harvard university when he studied economics.
- 335. This supermarket is open every day exception for Friday.
- 336. There's a wonderful group of old books in our town library.

- 337. Credit is money that you owe to someone.
- 338. My brother has to work during years before he could afford his own car.
- 339. Before he retired, my uncle worked like a postman.
- 340. I am used to play tennis a lot but I don't play now.
- 341. Did you used to eat a lot of sweets when you were a child?
- 342. He not use to smoke in the past but he smokes now
- 343. I rarely eat ice cream now but I was using to eat it when I was a child.
- 344. Last week our plane took up two hours late.
- 345. How far a have you read this book?
- 346. How much pages of that book have you been reading?
- 347. Have you ever been playing tennis?
- 348. Mary is still writing letters. She had written letters all day.
- 349. I knew about the accident for a long time.
- 350. Did you ever work in a factory? No. Never.
- 351. It was raining since I got up this morning.
- 352. I like your house. How long are you living here?
- 353. It started raining an hour ago. It rained for an hour.
- 354. I was tired yesterday because I was reading until late the night before.
- 355. Unfortunately even though he was training for six months, Ahmed didn't win the race.
- 356. As soon as I'm concerned, there are too many cars in modern cities.
- 357. He changed channels on the T.V. with the real control.
- 358. She didn't buy the cake for the party. She baked it hers.
- 359. My neighbour is a mechanic. He repairs his car his own.
- 360. Her cousins are dressmakers. They make their dresses by them.
- 361. We didn't go to a travel agent to organize our holiday. We organized it by ours.
- 362. Can you help me with these suitcases I can't lift them on myself.
- 363. She told her guests to help their own to food and drink.
- 364. The police carry guns to protect them in case they are shot at.

365. To save money, we decorated the house our own.

366. You look dreadful. You should look after yours a little better.

367. I'm writing to one of my friends. I'm writing to a friend of myself.

368. Ann invited some of her friends. Ann invited some friends of herself.

369. The box was too heavy for me to lift by mine.

370. Who was Tom with when you saw him? Nobody he was by him.

371. As soon as I'm concerned, we should support small shops and shop in them.

372. If not your help, I would have missed the way.

373. Only if you save money, you would be able to buy a car.

374. Hadn't I missed the early train, I would be late.

375. If the airline wasn't on strike, our flight wouldn't have been delayed.

376. You can visit me any time that you call me in advance.

377. I'll buy some mineral water but for I get thirsty.

378. She will go to the party in case she has finished her work.

379. It would be foolish of him if not accept the offer.

380. He wouldn't talk about his plans even you begged him to.

381. As long as I were you, I would sell my car.

382. Egypt is famous about her ancient monuments.

383. The train was late but nobody knows the reason of the delay.

384. He was worried for the result of the exam.

385. This house belongs to me. Its mine.

386. My brother applied to a vacant post in the bank.

387. Many people died by bird flu all over the world.

388. Nobody knows what the cause for the explosion was?

389. Do you think we'll find a solution at the problem?

390. Nadia gets on well with her employer. She has a good relation to him.

391. I'm not very good about repairing things.

392. We stayed at home because Janet wasn't keen over going out.

- 393. Mrs Davis is a keen gardener. She is very proud on her garden.
- 394. Your camera is similar of mine but not exactly the same.
- 395. My brother works about an international oil company.
- 396. You should apologize to your friend about you bad behaviour.
- 397. She lost her ring yesterday. She's looking after it everywhere.
- 398. I'm sure you're capable at passing your test.
- 399. The North coast is increasingly popular at holidaymakers.
- 400. He looks stupid with this haircut. Everybody will laugh about him.
- 401. Have a nice holiday. Take care at yourself.
- 402. He is old and lives alone. He needs someone to look at him.
- 403. I Always dream at being rich.
- 404. The number of people suffering of heart disease has increased.
- 405. I wanted to go alone but they insisted to coming with me.
- 406. Don't look out of the window. Concentrate in your work.
- 407. There was an accident. A bus collided to a car.
- 408. He wants his house to repair in a few days.
- 409. A Monastry is a building which monks live.
- 410. It believes that the Fayoum Oasis were used to irrigate farmers' fields.
- 411. It's believed that the temple of Edfue was starting in the year 237 BC.
- 412. The engineers took the injured man into the emergency room.
- 413. In ancient Egypt waterwheels were using to irrigate fields.
- 414. The Alexandria Library was open by the President in 2002.
- 415. He set out a large company.
- 416. Temporary shelters should have provided for the earthquake victims.
- 417. I don't want to think as a burden.
- 418. We have not allowed to leave before we finished the exercise.
- 419. Photographs must not taken in the museum.
- 420. I would have sent a letter if my uncle had known my address.
- 421. Students should have a dictionary to look after unknown words.
- 422. We are looking to going for a holiday.
- 423. Would you mind to answer some questions?

- 424. We will never run away with energy from the wind and sun.
- 425. If there is not enough food, people will die with hunger.
- 426. The old factory is polluted the air in our city.
- 427. Countries can't do much on them own to reduce the problem of global warming.
- 428. The information you are looking for can find on the internet.
- 429. At school we are been taught how to revise for our exams.
- 430. You don't have to take things that don't belong to you.
- 431. That film has already seen by more than five million people.
- 432. We couldn't to go to school tomorrow because it's a public holiday.
- 433. You needn't use your mobile phone while you are driving. It's against the law.
- 434. You didn't need to worry about the matter because I'll take care of that.
- 435. She hadn't to buy a dress for the party because she bought a new one last week.
- 436. You didn't need to buy meat because we have had much of it in the fridge.
- 437. Would you want borrowing me year casette player?
- 438. You shouldn't park here. It is forbidden.
- 439. She must be on holiday. I'm not sure.
- 440. He can be sleeping now. I'm sure.
- 441. You can go to the doctor. This is my advice.
- 442. What a lovely day. How good going for a walk?
- 443. You will drive more slowly. It's raining heavily.
- 444. You better leave early. It's a good idea.
- 445. The police are carrying away an investigation into the cause of the star's death.
- 446. She looks miserable. She will have lost her job.
- 447. Could you mind typing these letters for me?
- 448. You won't take a jacket. It's rather warm.
- 449. You won't wait her because you're not allowed to.
- 450. It's the to best book I've even read.
- 451. My car broke out on the motor way and I hod to walk to

335

the garage.

- 452. What do you make for a living. I work as a nurse.
- 453. Could you make me a favour if you are going out?
- 454. Could you get me some milk?
- 455. Now's a good time to ask for a rise because your boss is in good mind.
- 456. The storm broke out after we have been driving for four hours.
- 457. Did you visit the national museum yet?.
- 458. The last time I went to the theatre was a month already.
- 459. As both her parents had died, she was brought in by her grand parents.
- 460. I go swimming twice one weak.
- 461. Tourists from all over the world visit Egypt monuments every day.
- 462. There are castles all over British Isles.
- 463. A busiest city in Britain is London.
- 464. The information you gave me about the trip were false.
- 465. The firemen were putting out the fire while passers by was looking in amazement.
- 466. The police has caught the man that robbed the supermarket.
- 467. A group of architects are designing the new supermarket centre.
- 468. Not have I seen such a smart child.
- 469. My black trousers is dirty. I'll wear something else.
- 470. She has soon finished her homework.
- 471. Everywhere else in the world can you see such rare birds.
- 472. My house isn't so farther from the city centre as Jane's.
- 473. Many new facilities have been provided for disabled.
- 474. Not only the teacher gave us homework but she assigned us a project as well.
- 475. The teacher hasn't given us a test since three days.
- 476. Nagi, I found a brown under the desk. Is it your?

Good Luck